

G E R M A N

FLAMRIC

VOLUME 4

GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURE III

LESSONS 27-38

AUGUST 1981

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

PREFACE

The four volumes entitled "Grammatical Structures" consist of 44 lessons and are designed to teach the basic structures of the German language. All of the lessons were taken entirely from the DLIFLC Basic Structure Series, with the exception of particular adaptations and additional material being included to make them almost self-contained for self-paced study or classroom instruction. The grammatical features contained in the lessons are sequenced according to difficulty, i.e. from simple to difficult, so that similar grammatical features are not necessarily placed in the same or consecutive lessons.

GUIDELINES

Use of this book does not depend upon the availability of the recorded tapes from the DLIFLC Basic Structure Series. (Note: Cassette tapes are available from the Basic Structure Series.) If, however, use of the tape recordings is desired, you may easily adapt the tapes to the Grammatical Structures lessons. You must be aware, though, that the word "lesson" is substituted for "module" and the lesson number is one higher than the original module number (e.g. Lesson 1 is the Introductory Module and Lesson 2 is Module 1).

In order to focus maximum attention on the structural features themselves, the vocabulary used in the lessons has been restricted to a small number of high frequency words, most of which should already be quite familiar to you. Whenever additional words are introduced, the English meaning will be shown.

Each lesson usually includes two or more related sections indicated by a section topic. The end of each section is identified on the recording by two beeps. At the end of a given section, you may, if you wish, repeat that section for additional study and practice. In addition, it is important to note that if you are looking for a particular grammatical point, a comprehensive index can be found following the text at the end of each volume of the Grammatical Structures portion of FLAMRIC.

OBJECTIVE

Upon satisfactory completion of a lesson and quiz, you should be able to easily and accurately speak and write correct German sentences embodying the structural features taught.

CONTENTS

LESSON 27	"Wer" and "Was" as Relative Pronouns and "Wo" and "Da" Compounds.	1	Section 1 - Genitive Case forms of Common Nouns, "Der" and "Ein" Words . . .	110	
	Section 1 - "Wer" and "Was" as Relative Pronouns	1	Section 2 - Genitive Case of the Interrogative and Relative Pronouns.	130	
	Section 2 - "Wo" Compounds	16	Section 3 - Genitive Case after certain Prepositions	136	
	Section 3 - "Da" Compounds	26	Section 4 - Genitive Case forms of Proper Nouns.	140	
LESSON 28	Formation of Present Tense Passive Sentences.	29	LESSON 32	Passive Voice (Present Perfect Tense)	145
	Section 1 - Present Tense Passive.	29	Section 1 - Present Perfect Tense in Passive Voice	145	
	Section 2 - Passive Sentences containing Modal Auxiliaries.	42	Section 2 - Present Perfect Tense Passive with: "Von + Agent" Phrases; Dative Verbs; Omission of "Man"	155	
	Section 3 - The Passive with Dative Objects; Passive Equivalents of Active Sentences with "Man"	48	LESSON 33	Present and Past Participles	161
LESSON 29	Imperfect Tense I (Weak Verbs)	55	Section 1 - Formation of Present Participles; Review of Past Participles	161	
	Section 1 - Formation of the Imperfect Tense (Weak Verbs)	55	Section 2 - Present and Past Participles used as Adverbs	166	
	Section 2 - Imperfect Tense of the Modal Auxiliaries	66	Section 3 - Present and Past Participles used as Predicate Adjectives.	171	
LESSON 30	Imperfect Tense II	73	Section 4 - Present and Past Participles used as Descriptive Adjectives.	175	
	Section 1 - Imperfect Tense of "Haben", "Sein", and "Werden"	73	LESSON 34	Past Perfect Tense	180
	Section 2 - Imperfect Tense of Strong Verbs.	86	Section 1 - Past Perfect Tense of Regular and Irregular Verbs.	180	
	Section 3 - Imperfect Tense of Mixed Verbs	104	Section 2 - Past Perfect Tense of Separable Prefix Verbs and Reflexive Constructions.	192	
LESSON 31	Genitive Case.	110			

Section 3 - Some Considerations in the use of the Past Perfect Tense. . . .	196	LESSON 38	Present Perfect and Past Perfect Tense using Modal Auxiliaries (Double Infinitives).	271
LESSON 35	Future Tense			205
Section 1 - The Present Tense with Future Meaning.	205	Section 1 - Present Perfect Constructions using Modal Auxiliaries		271
Section 2 - Formation and Use of the Future Tense		Section 2 - Present Perfect Constructions using Modal Auxiliaries in Subordinate Clauses		285
Section 3 - Future Tense expressing Present Probability.	222	Section 3 - Past Perfect Constructions using Modal Auxiliaries		289
Section 4 - Future Tense in Passive Voice. .	224	Section 4 - Present Perfect and Past Perfect Sentences using Modals as Full Verbs		293
LESSON 36	Pre-Noun Inserts, Extended Adjectival and Adverbial Constructions.			230
Section 1 - Overview of Pre-Noun Inserts; Extended Adjectival Constructions containing Past Participles. . .	230	Index to Grammatical Features.		295
Section 2 - Extended Adjectival Constructions containing Present Participles .	240			
Section 3 - Extended Adverbial Constructions containing Present Participles .	243			
LESSON 37	Passive Voice (Imperfect Tense). .			248
Section 1 - Imperfect Tense of Passive Voice Sentences.	248			
Section 2 - Imperfect Tense of Passive Sentences containing Modal Auxiliaries.	262			

"Wer" and "Was" as Relative Pronouns;
"wo-" and "da-" Compounds

You are already familiar with wer and was as interrogative pronouns. In this Lesson, you will learn the use of wer and was as relative pronouns. In addition, the so-called "wo-" and "da-compounds" will be introduced and practiced.

The Lesson is divided into the following sections:

1. Wer and Was as Relative Pronouns
2. Wo- Compounds
3. Da- Compounds

1. "Wer" and "Was" as Relative Pronouns

In Lessons 25 and 24, you learned the forms and uses of the relative pronoun der (die, das, den, etc.) in sentences such as:

Das ist mein Nachbar, der das Haus verkauft.
(This is my neighbor, who is selling the house.)

Das ist die Lampe, die Inge gekauft hat.
(That is the lamp Inge bought.)

The main clause would be

Ich weiss nicht

Since there is no noun present in the main clause to which the "who" of the subordinate clause would refer, a form of der cannot be used.

Which of the two pronouns wer or was would be used instead?

In the above two examples, and in the other practice sentences of Lessons 25 and 24, the noun to which the relative pronoun referred was always present in the main clause. When the noun to which the relative pronoun refers is not present in the main clause, der (or other forms of der) cannot be used. Instead, the pronouns wer or was are used. Wer refers to persons, and was refers to things or ideas.

For example, suppose you wanted to say the German equivalent of:

I don't know who sold the house.

What would the German for the main clause be?

Since a person is being referred to ("I don't know who"), the appropriate form of wer must be used, rather than a form of was. Thus:

I don't know who sold the house.

would be rendered:

Ich weiss nicht, wer das Haus verkauft hat.

Now consider the English sentence:

He does exactly what he wants [to do].

The German main clause for this sentence would be

Er macht genau

Does the relative pronoun (in the English sentence, "what") refer to a person or a thing or idea?

NOTES

It refers to a thing or idea, so the appropriate form of was would be required:

Er macht genau, was er will.

(He does exactly what he wants.)

Note that the main clause does not necessarily have to express a "lack of information" on the speaker's part in order for the wer/was principle to apply.

Again, the determining factor in the use of wer or was (rather than der) is whether or not the noun to which the relative pronoun refers is actually present in the main clause.

Wer and was as relative pronouns may also occur in subject clauses frequently of the proverb type, such as:

Wer nicht wagt, gewinnt nicht.

(He who doesn't dare doesn't win.)

Was der Bauer nicht kennt, [das] isst er nicht.

(What the farmer doesn't know he doesn't eat.)

For each of the following sentences, make a check mark under der, wer, or was to indicate which of these relative pronouns (or a form thereof) would be used in the corresponding German sentence. It will be helpful for you to remember that relative pronouns are often omitted in English sentences (for example, "That is the lamp Inge bought," "This is the man I saw in the street"). By thinking of the more formal English pattern ("That is the lamp which Inge bought," "This is the man whom I saw in the street"), the correct German pattern becomes more evident.

9. I don't know whom Franz met at school.

The correct answers are:

1. der

2. was

3. der

4. wer

5. wer

6. der

7. was

8. der

9. wer

START THE TAPE.

	<u>der</u>	<u>wer</u>	<u>was</u>
1. That is the lady to whom I gave the flowers.	_____	_____	_____
2. I know exactly what he is thinking about.	_____	_____	_____
3. This is the new car we bought.	_____	_____	_____
4. I don't know who took the book.	_____	_____	_____
5. Hans won't tell me whom he's accompanying.	_____	_____	_____
6. That's the child who was sick so long.	_____	_____	_____
7. You can say what you want.	_____	_____	_____
8. This is the gentleman we invited.	_____	_____	_____

We will first practice sentences which use wer in its different forms and will later discuss and practice sentences using was. Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing especially the form of the relative pronoun.

1. Ich weiss, wer das Buch genommen hat.
(I know who took the book.)
2. Hans sagt mir nicht, wem er das Auto verkauft.
(Hans won't tell me to whom he's selling the car.)
3. Ich kann mir denken, wen sie übers Wochenende besucht hat.
(I can imagine whom she visited over the weekend.)

In what case is the relative pronoun in sentence 1?

It is in the nominative case, since it serves as the subject of the relative clause:

<u>wer</u>	<u>das Buch</u>	<u>genommen hat.</u>
subject	direct object	verb

You can also notice that transposed word order (inflected verb at the end of the clause) applies here, as is true of all relative clauses.

In what case are the relative pronouns in sentences 2 and 3?

In sentence 2, the relative pronoun is in the dative case, because it is the indirect object of the relative clause:

<u>wem</u>	<u>er</u>	<u>das Auto</u>	<u>verkauft.</u>
indirect object	subject	direct object	verb

In sentence 3, the relative pronoun is in the accusative case, since it is the direct object of the relative clause:

<u>wen</u>	<u>sie</u>	<u>übers Wochenende</u>	<u>besucht hat</u>
direct object	subject		verb

You have probably observed that the endings of wer, wem, and wen are the same as the nominative, dative, and accusative masculine forms of the relative pronoun der. Indeed, these three forms of wer are the only forms used, regardless of the gender or number of the person or persons implied. In other words, your only task in determining the proper form of wer to use in a given context is to identify the case in which it is being used. This is found by considering whether the relative pronoun serves as subject, indirect object, or direct object within the relative clause, or is preceded by a preposition which requires the dative or the accusative.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of wer.
Notice also the English translation of each sentence.

1. Ich kann Ihnen nicht sagen, _____ hier wohnt.
(I can't tell you who is living here.)
2. Wir wollen nicht wissen, _____ du den Brief geschrieben hast.
(We don't want to know to whom you wrote the letter.)
3. Ich bin nicht sicher, _____ sie eingeladen haben.
(I am not sure whom they invited.)
4. Weisst du, mit _____ Helga gerade getanzt hat?
(Do you know with whom Helga just danced?)
5. Ich kann mir denken, für _____ die Blumen sind.
(I can imagine for whom the flowers are.)

6. Hans hat uns nicht gesagt, bei _____ er wohnt.
(Hans didn't tell us whom he is living with.)
7. Schlagen Sie bitte vor, _____ mitgehen soll.
(Please suggest who should go along.)
8. Warum sagst du uns nicht, _____ dein neuer Freund ist?
(Why don't you tell us who your new friend is?)
9. Inge möchte wissen, nach _____ ihre Freundin gefragt hat.
(Inge would like to know whom her girl friend asked about.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. wer
- _____ 2. wem
- _____ 3. wen
- _____ 4. wem
- _____ 5. wen
- _____ 6. wem
- _____ 7. wer
- _____ 8. wer
- _____ 9. wem

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate form of wer.

- 1. Ich weiss nicht, das Spiel gewonnen hat.
- 2. Von diesem Fenster aus kann man gut sehen, über die Strasse geht.
- 3. Er hat schon vergessen, von er das Geschenk bekommen hat.
- 4. Haben Sie gesehen, aus dem Haus gekommen ist?
- 5. Der Kellner weiss nicht, den Wein bestellt hat.
- 6. Inge hat mir immer noch nicht geschrieben, mit sie auf Urlaub fährt.
- 7. Ich möchte gern wissen, von das Kind das gelernt hat.
- 8. Er will mir nicht sagen, mit er arbeitet.
- 9. Sie weiss nicht mehr, durch sie ihn kennengelernt hat.
- 10. Franz weiss noch nicht, er in Deutschland besuchen möchte.

The relative pronoun was operates in a somewhat different manner from wer. When the relative clause is not introduced by a preposition, only the form was is used, regardless of the gender, number, or case of the noun referred to.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing that there is no preposition used in the relative clause and that the relative pronoun is always was, regardless of gender, number, or case.

1. Hans sagt uns nicht, er dieses Wochenende macht.
(Hans doesn't tell us what he's going to do this weekend.)
2. Ingrid weiss nie, sie will.
(Ingrid never knows what she wants.)
3. Ich kann mir nicht vorstellen, passiert ist.
(I can't imagine what happened.)
4. Wir haben keine Ahnung, das ist.
(We have no idea what that is.)
5. Du musst dir unbedingt ansehen, Herr Meyer seiner Frau mitgebracht hat.
(You simply must see what Mr. Meyer brought his wife.)

Was is often used in combination with alles, vieles, manches, etwas, and nichts, with the following meanings:

alles, was	(all that, everything that)
vieles, was	(much that, many things that)
manches, was	(a number of things that)
etwas, was	(something that)
nichts, was	(nothing that)

As you have noticed, there is a progressive decrease in "quantity" as one goes from alles, was (all that) to nichts, was (nothing that). In this respect, vieles, was implies a much larger number or quantity than manches, was, as for example:

Ich glaube vieles, was er sagt.
(I believe much that he says.
[implying that there are few areas of disagreement])

Ich glaube manches, was er sagt.
(I believe a number of things that he says.
[implying that there are nonetheless several areas of disagreement])

All of the above expressions are used with a singular verb, even though there may be a plural connotation:

Manches, was sie sagen, ist nicht richtig.
(A number of things they say are not right.)

Vieles, was er kauft, ist zu teuer.
(Many things he buys are too expensive.)

Study the above expressions until you feel you know them thoroughly, then turn the page for spoken and written exercises.

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Listen to and repeat the German sentences, noticing the English translations.

1. Er versteht alles, was im Lehrbuch steht.
(He understands everything that is in the textbook.)
2. In diesem Laden ist nichts, was er kaufen will.
(There is nothing in that store he wants to buy.)
3. Er redet über etwas, was ich geschrieben habe.
(He is talking about something I wrote.)
4. Die Schüler vergessen vieles, was die Lehrerin erklärt.
(The students forget many things the teacher explains.)
5. Im Koffer ist manches, was er nicht braucht.
(There are a number of things in the suitcase that he doesn't need.)

Fill in the blanks on the basis of the given English. Remember to insert the necessary commas. Where a second blank is shown, write in the proper verb form as well.

1. There are many things in this town I haven't seen yet.

In dieser Stadt gibt es _____ ich noch nicht gesehen habe.

2. A number of things he brought along are expensive.

_____ er mitgebracht hat, _____ teuer.

3. There is nothing Professor Schulz doesn't know.

Es gibt _____ Professor Schulz nicht weiss.

4. Don't you have something that's easy to read?

Haben Sie nicht _____ leicht zu lesen ist?

5. Peter writes down everything his teacher says.

_____ sein Lehrer sagt, schreibt Peter auf.

6. She is ordering something she never ate before.

Sie bestellt _____ sie noch nie gegessen hat.

7. A number of things he said were interesting.

_____ er gesagt hat, _____ interessant.

8. There are many things I don't understand.

Es gibt _____ ich nicht verstehe.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. vieles, was
- _____ 2. Manches, was ist
- _____ 3. nichts, was
- _____ 4. etwas, was
- _____ 5. Alles, was
- _____ 6. etwas, was
- _____ 7. Manches, was war
- _____ 8. vieles, was

START THE TAPE.

Say a complete German sentence on the basis of the given English.

1. He says a lot for which he is sorry later.
Er sagt ihm später leid tut.
2. In this movie were a number of things I didn't understand.
In diesem Film war ich nicht verstanden habe.
3. We can't buy everything he needs.
.... er braucht, können wir nicht kaufen.
4. There is nothing in this town one would care to look at.
In dieser Stadt gibt es man sich ansehen möchte.
5. He hears a number of things he cannot understand at all.
Er hört er gar nicht verstehen kann.
6. There is something in the basement that I haven't seen up to now.
Im Keller ist ich bis jetzt noch nicht gesehen habe.
7. The teacher says something which pleases the entire class.
Der Lehrer sagt der ganzen Klasse gefällt.

Another use of was is to refer to the idea expressed in an entire preceding clause, as in the following examples. Listen to and repeat the German sentences, noticing the English translation.

1. Sie hat fünf Kleider gekauft, was ihrer Mutter nicht gefällt.

(She bought five dresses, a fact that doesn't please her mother.)

2. Er ist schon vierzig Jahre alt, was ich nicht glauben kann.

(He is already 40 years old, which I cannot believe.)

3. Die Soldaten müssen jeden Morgen um fünf Uhr aufstehen, was sie nicht gern tun.

(The soldiers have to get up every morning at five o'clock, which they don't like to do.)

4. Herr Müller geht jeden Tag spazieren, was eine gute Idee ist.

(Mr. Müller goes every day for a walk, which is a good idea.)

Most German adjectives can be converted into neuter nouns by capitalization and adding the ending -e to the positive, comparative, or superlative forms:

das Kleine (the small thing; the small things)

das Kleinere (the smaller thing; the smaller things)

das Kleinste (the smallest thing; the smallest things)

Whenever the superlative form of an adjective-noun is used in conjunction with a relative clause, the relative pronoun "was" is used. Listen to and repeat the following examples:

Das ist das Billigste, was man kaufen kann.
(That's the cheapest thing one can buy.)

Das ist das Beste, was ich je gehört habe.
(That's the best thing I've ever heard.)

Seine Bücher sind das Interessanteste, was ich gelesen habe.

(His books are the most interesting thing I've read.)

The following exercises combine all the forms and uses of wer and was that you have studied in this section. Fill in the blanks on the basis of the given English, adding any necessary commas. Some sentences use a form of der.

1. I don't know who closed the door.

Ich weiss nicht, _____ die Tür zugemacht hat.

2. That is the best thing I have read.

Das ist das Beste, _____ ich gelesen habe.

3. I don't believe everything I hear.

Ich glaube nicht _____ ich höre.

4. Is that the book you read yesterday?

Ist das das Buch, _____ du gestern gelesen hast?

5. Do you know what's being shown at the movies tonight?

Weisst du, _____ heute abend im Kino gezeigt wird?

6. Hans buys nothing he doesn't need.

Hans kauft _____ er nicht braucht.

7. Can you tell me to whom you gave the book?

Können Sie mir sagen, _____ Sie das Buch gegeben haben?

8. Ingrid forgot whom she is supposed to call.

Ingrid hat vergessen, _____ sie anrufen soll.

9. Maria doesn't know what she should wear tonight.

Maria weiss noch nicht, _____ sie heute abend anziehen soll.

10. Is that the lady to whom you brought the present?

Ist das die Dame, _____ du das Geschenk gebracht hast?

11. Karla cannot go out tonight, which doesn't please her at all.

Karla kann heute abend nicht ausgehen, _____ ihr gar nicht gefällt.

12. Mr. Meyer buys his wife a lot of things she does not like.

Herr Meyer kauft seiner Frau _____ ihr nicht gefällt.

13. That is the most beautiful thing I have seen in this town.

Das ist das Schönste, _____ ich in dieser Stadt gesehen habe.

14. Is that the man whom you invited?

Is das der Mann, _____ du eingeladen hast?

15. When mother goes to town she always buys something that tastes good.

Wenn Mutter in die Stadt fährt, kauft sie immer
_____ gut schmeckt.

16. This is the student who was absent yesterday.

Das ist der Schüler, _____ gestern gefehlt
hat.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. wer

_____ 2. was

_____ 3. alles, was

_____ 4. das

_____ 5. was

_____ 6. nichts, was

_____ 7. wem

_____ 8. wen

_____ 9. was

_____ 10. der

_____ 11. was

_____ 12. vieles, was

_____ 13. was

_____ 14. den

_____ 15. etwas, was

_____ 16. der

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.

1. That is the best thing you can do.

Das ist das Beste, Sie tun können.

2. Show me the lady who owns the house!

Zeig mir die Dame, das Haus gehört!

3. He is selling everything he has.

Er verkauft er hat.

4. Hans still goes out with Paula, which I don't understand.

Hans geht immer noch mit Paula aus, ich nicht verstehe.

5. Have you heard who is in this class?

Haben Sie gehört, in dieser Klasse ist?

6. Who is the gentleman who bought the car?

Wer ist der Herr, das Auto gekauft hat?

7. We don't understand everything he says in German.

Wir verstehen nicht er auf Deutsch sagt.

8. These pictures are the most beautiful thing I've seen in this museum.

Diese Bilder sind das Schönste, ich in diesem Museum gesehen habe.

9. Hans says something that I didn't know before.

Hans sagt ich vorher nicht gewusst habe.

10. This new suit has a number of things I don't like.

An diesem neuen Anzug ist mir nicht gefällt.

11. Do you know with whom she is going out tonight?

Weisst du, mit sie heute abend ausgeht?

12. Is that the newest thing you have heard?

Ist das das Neueste, du gehört hast?

Let us now consider the pronoun wer (wem, wen) as an interrogative pronoun. In Lessons 5 and 8 you learned that wer, when it follows a preposition, must be in the case form required by that preposition; that is to say, either wen or wem must be used. Some prepositions don't lend themselves to natural-sounding constructions with interrogative pronouns; therefore, we will work with the restricted list below.

Section 2

"Wo-" Compounds

Dative Only

bei	(with; at the home of)
mit	(with)
von	(from; about, of)
zu	(to, toward)

Accusative Only

durch	(through, by)
für	(for)
gegen	(against, opposed to)

Dative-or-Accusative

an	(of, about [<u>Accusative only</u> after verbs of saying or thinking])
hinter	(behind)
neben	(next to)
über	(about [<u>Accusative only</u> after verbs of saying or thinking])

As you remember, "either-case" prepositions use the dative form when absence of motion or motion with no particular destination is expressed in the sentence. The accusative form is used when there is motion with a specific destination.

Study this list to refresh your memory of these prepositions and the category to which they belong. Then turn the page for exercises.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of wer.

1. With whom are you going shopping tomorrow?

Mit _____ gehst du morgen einkaufen?

2. Against whom did they play soccer yesterday?

Gegen _____ haben sie gestern Fussball gespielt?

3. At whose place did Inge spend her vacation?

Bei _____ hat Inge ihren Urlaub verbracht?

4. Of whom are you thinking?

An _____ denkst du?

5. Behind whom were they driving?

Hinter _____ sind sie gefahren?

6. From whom is that letter?

Von _____ ist dieser Brief?

7. For whom does your brother work now?

Für _____ arbeitet dein Bruder jetzt?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate interrogative pronoun on the basis of the given English.

1. To whom did Franz say that?

Zu hat Franz das gesagt?

2. About whom is he talking?

Über spricht er?

3. With whom are you going out tonight?

Mit gehen Sie heute abend aus?

4. Through whom did you find a job?

Durch hast du Arbeit gefunden?

5. Next to whom did you sit last night?

Neben hast du gestern abend gesessen?

6. From whom did you get this beautiful present?

Von hast du dieses schöne Geschenk bekommen?

When the interrogative pronoun wer is preceded by a preposition, there is never any contraction or alteration in the two words: bei wem, mit wem, über wen, ohne wen, and so forth. In other words, when referring to persons, the proper formula is: preposition + a form of wer.

Now let us consider the interrogative pronoun was. When referring to things, it is NOT possible to use preposition + was. Constructions such as *mit was, *von was, *bei was, and so forth are considered substandard in both speech and writing. Instead, the so-called wo-compound is used, that is to say, a combination of the question word wo- and the preposition. Instead of mit was, womit is used. Instead of von was, wovon is used, and so forth. (There is one exception, to be discussed.)

Listen to and repeat the wo-compounds below, noticing the preposition + was combinations which they replace. Remember that the latter are never used in correct speech or writing:

	(*)
wobei	(bei was)
wodurch	(durch was)
wofür	(für was)
wogegen	(gegen was)
wohinter	(hinter was)
womit	(mit was)
wonach	(nach was)
woneben	(neben was)
wovon	(von was)

wovor	(vor was)
wozu	(zu was)
wozwischen	(zwischen was)

If the preposition begins with a vowel, an -r- is inserted between wo- and the preposition to facilitate pronunciation. Listen and repeat:

woran	(an was)
worauf	(auf was)
woraus	(aus was)
worin	(in was)
worüber	(über was)
worum	(um was)
worunter	(unter was)

The one preposition below does NOT follow the wo-compound formula but instead uses preposition + was.

ohne was

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. wem

_____ 2. wen

- _____ 3. wem
- _____ 4. wen
- _____ 5. wem
- _____ 6. wem
- _____ 7. wen

NOTES

For each of the prepositions below, write the appropriate combination with wo-, except where this compounding is not possible. In the latter case, write the preposition plus the interrogative pronoun referring to things or ideas.

- 1. nach _____
- 2. um _____
- 3. gegen _____
- 4. bei _____
- 5. ohne _____
- 6. an _____
- 7. für _____
- 8. neben _____
- 9. unter _____
- 10. auf _____
- 11. mit _____
- 12. vor _____
- 13. durch _____
- 14. von _____
- 15. zu _____
- 16. in _____
- 17. aus _____
- 18. über _____
- 19. hinter _____
- 20. zwischen _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. wonach
- _____ 2. worum
- _____ 3. wogegen
- _____ 4. wobei
- _____ 5. ohne was
- _____ 6. woran
- _____ 7. wofür
- _____ 8. woneben
- _____ 9. worunter
- _____ 10. worauf
- _____ 11. womit
- _____ 12. wovon
- _____ 13. wodurch
- _____ 14. wovon
- _____ 15. wozu
- _____ 16. worin
- _____ 17. woraus
- _____ 18. worüber
- _____ 19. wohinter
- _____ 20. wozwischen

START THE TAPE.

Look at each of the following sentences, then say the question for which the printed sentence would be an answer. For example:

You see: Er schreibt mit einem Bleistift.

You say: Womit schreibt er?

- 1. Er fragt nach dem Buch.
- 2. Hans wohnt neben der Kirche.
- 3. Ingrid geht ohne Bücher zur Schule.
- 4. Das Auto fährt gegen eine Mauer.
- 5. Der Brief liegt unter den Zeitschriften.
- 6. Er hat sich beim Schwimmen erkältet. (caught a cold)
- 7. Gisela liest in einem Buch.
- 8. Wir warten noch auf den Bus.
- 9. Der Soldat spricht von seinem Urlaub.

10. Er braucht das Buch zum Lernen.
11. Sie interessieren sich für Musik.
12. Wir sprechen über den Film.
13. Der Schüler hat keine Angst vor der Prüfung.
14. Er hat kein Geld für seinen Urlaub.
15. Durch Arbeit ist er reich geworden.
16. Er denkt immer an Geld.
17. Herr Meyer bittet um Hilfe.
18. Das Kleid ist aus Wolle.
19. Er schreibt mit dem roten Bleistift.

The wo-compounds with prepositions can also be used in relative clauses. Listen to and repeat the following examples:

1. Ich weiss, woran er denkt.
(I know what he is thinking of.)
2. Er will uns nicht sagen, wogegen er das Auto gefahren hat.
(He doesn't want to tell us what he crashed the car against.)
3. Wir wissen nicht, worüber Professor Schulz morgen spricht.
(We don't know what Professor Schulz will be speaking about tomorrow.)
4. Ich kann mir denken, wofür er das Geld braucht.
(I can imagine what he needs the money for.)

The following exercises combine all the material you have learned in this and the preceding section.

NOTES

Fill in the blanks on the basis of the given English.
More than one word may be required.

1. I know what he is thinking of. (use an)

Ich weiss, _____ er denkt.

2. With what did he write the letter?

_____ hat er den Brief geschrieben?

3. I can't tell you to whom he gave the book.

Ich kann Ihnen nicht sagen, _____ er das
Buch gegeben hat.

4. I am against horse races; what are you against?

Ich bin gegen Pferderennen; _____ bist du?

5. Professor Schulz wants to know who is going to
the library.

Professor Schulz will wissen, _____ zur
Bibliothek geht.

6. What did you talk about? (use über)

_____ habt ihr gesprochen?

7. What is this all about? (use um)

_____ handelt es sich?

8. What do you need this for? (use zu)

_____ brauchst du das?

9. With whom did you go on vacation?

_____ bist du auf Urlaub gefahren?

10. Hans would like to leave school, a fact his
mother does not like at all.

Hans möchte von der Schule abgehen, _____
seiner Mutter gar nicht gefällt.

11. Mrs. Müller buys a lot that she doesn't need.

Frau Müller kauft _____ sie nicht braucht.

12. Next to whom did you sit in the plane?

_____ hast du im Flugzeug gesessen?

13. There are a number of things in this newspaper
which one cannot believe.

In dieser Zeitung steht _____ man nicht
glauben kann.

14. For what [purpose] did you buy a new bicycle?
(use zu)

_____ hast du ein neues Fahrrad gekauft?

15. That is the best I have heard.

Das ist das Beste, _____ ich gehört habe.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. woran

_____ 2. Womit

_____ 3. wem

_____ 4. wogegen

_____ 5. wer

_____ 6. Worüber

_____ 7. Worum

_____ 8. Wozu

_____ 9. Mit wem

_____ 10. was

_____ 11. vieles, was

_____ 12. Neben wem

_____ 13. manches, was

_____ 14. Wozu

_____ 15. was

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences based on the given English.

1. Everything he buys is expensive.
.... er kauft, ist teuer.
2. There is nothing cheap in this restaurant.
In diesem Restaurant gibt es billig ist.
3. For what [purpose] does Peter need two bicycles?
(use zu)
.... braucht Peter zwei Fahrräder?
4. The poor woman doesn't know what she is supposed to live on. (use von)
Die arme Frau weiss nicht, sie leben soll.
5. Mrs. Müller always orders something that tastes good.
Frau Müller bestellt immer gut schmeckt.
6. I don't know what she told him.
Ich weiss nicht, sie ihm gesagt hat.
7. Hans would like to know who took his car.
Hans möchte wissen, sein Auto genommen hat.
8. I don't know by what means he got rich.
(use durch)
Ich weiss nicht, er reich geworden ist.
9. This church is the most beautiful thing I've ever seen.
Diese Kirche ist das Schönste, ich je gesehen habe.
10. I don't know what he is waiting for. (use auf)
Ich weiss nicht, er wartet.
11. Inge doesn't remember to whom she said that.
Inge kann sich nicht erinnern, sie das gesagt hat.
12. What is Professor Schulz interested in? (use für)
.... interessiert sich Professor Schulz?
13. That is the newest thing I hear.
Das ist das Neueste, ich höre.
14. In this town there are a number of things I don't like.
In dieser Stadt gibt es mir nicht gefällt.
15. Mr. Meyer takes a walk every night, which is very healthy for him.
Herr Meyer geht jeden Abend spazieren, sehr gesund für ihn ist.

Section 3

"Da-" Compounds

In Lessons 5 and 8, you learned the use of personal pronouns following prepositions, in sentences such as:

Der Mann spricht von Hans und Peter.

Der Mann spricht von ihnen.

Wir kaufen die Blumen für unsere Mutter.

Wir kaufen die Blumen für sie.

In all of the exercises of Lesson 5 and 8, the pronouns used referred to a person (or persons), NOT to things or ideas. Whenever the pronoun following a preposition refers to things or ideas, it is not possible to use a preposition + pronoun combination. Instead, the so-called da-compounds are used. These are formed in a manner analogous to the wo-compounds you studied in the preceding section.

For example, suppose that you wanted to replace the underlined words in the following sentence by a pronoun:

Ich schreibe mit dem Bleistift.

In other words, instead of saying the German equivalent of "I am writing with the pencil," you would want to say the German equivalent of "I am writing with it." Since the pronoun following the preposition refers to a thing (rather than a person) it is NOT possible to say: *Ich schreibe mit ihm. Instead, a da-compound would be used:

Ich schreibe damit.

(I am writing with it.)

Whenever the preposition begins with a vowel, the corresponding da-compound uses an inserted -r- for the sake of pronunciation, as you have already seen with wo-compounds. For example, the da-compound for um is darum. Ohne does not form a da-compound, but is simply followed by the appropriate pronoun ("ihn," "es," "sie," etc.), even when referring to things or ideas.

Write the appropriate da-compound for each of the prepositions below:

1. vor _____
2. um _____
3. durch _____
4. neben _____
5. in _____
6. zu _____
7. an _____
8. mit _____
9. unter _____
10. von _____
11. auf _____
12. gegen _____
13. über _____
14. zwischen _____
15. aus _____
16. bei _____
17. für _____
18. nach _____

19. hinter _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say each of the sentences below, replacing the underlined words by the appropriate da-compound. For example:

You see: Er steht vor dem Haus.

You say: Er steht davor.

1. Ich bitte ihn um das Buch.
Ich bitte ihn
2. Hans und Peter sprechen oft von ihrem Urlaub.
Hans und Peter sprechen oft
3. Wir warten auf den Bus.
Wir warten
4. Gegen das Wetter kann man nichts machen.
.... kann man nichts machen.
5. Dr. Lange spricht gern über die Presse.
Dr. Lange spricht gern
6. Karl liegt unter dem Auto.
Karl liegt
7. Ich trinke nicht aus diesem Glas.
Ich trinke nicht
8. Nach dem Kino gehen wir essen.
.... gehen wir essen.

9. Inge fährt gern mit dem neuen Sportwagen.
Inge fährt gern
10. Der Brief liegt zwischen zwei Büchern.
Der Brief liegt
11. Was sagst du zu dem schlechten Wetter?
Was sagst du?
12. Herr Meyer wohnt neben der Schule.
Herr Meyer wohnt
13. Park dein Auto hinter dem Haus!
Park dein Auto!
14. Wieviel hast du für das alte Fahrrad bekommen?
Wieviel hast du bekommen?
15. Ist Peter auch beim Fussballspiel gewesen?
Ist Peter auch gewesen?
16. Was ist in dem Koffer?
Was ist?

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
1. davor
 2. darum
 3. dadurch
 4. daneben
 5. darin
 6. dazu
 7. daran
 8. damit
 9. darunter
 10. davon
 11. darauf
 12. dagegen
 13. darüber
 14. dazwischen
 15. daraus
 16. dabei
 17. dafür
 18. danach
 19. dahinter

LESSON 28

Section 1

Formation of Present Tense Passive Sentences

Consider the following English sentence:

The officer is driving to the restaurant.

In this example, the subject of the sentence ("the officer"), is carrying out an action ("driving"). Sentences in which the grammatical subject is performing or carrying out some activity are said to be in the active voice.

Now look at the following sentence:

The officer is being driven to the restaurant.

In this example, is the grammatical subject carrying out some activity?

No, the grammatical subject ("the officer") is not itself active, but is instead being acted upon ("being driven") by some other agent. In other words, the subject is the passive recipient of the action of the sentence. Sentences of this type are said to be in the passive voice.

For each of the sentences below, write "active" if the sentence is in the active voice and "passive" if it is in the passive voice.

1. The mechanic is repairing the car. _____
2. The president is elected every four years. _____
3. Funds are being sought for the new project. _____
4. The student is buying a paper at the newsstand. _____
5. The men are seen from the hill. _____

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct answers are:

1. active
2. passive
3. passive
4. active
5. passive

START THE TAPE.

By now you should have some feeling for active and passive constructions in English, and you should be able to analyze these constructions more closely. The three passive voice sentences in the preceding exercise were:

2. The president is elected every four years.
3. Funds are being sought for the new project.
5. The men are seen from the hill.

As you can see from the above, the present tense passive voice in English is formed by using the appropriate present tense form of the auxiliary verb "to be," together with the past participle of the main verb. In some cases, as in sentence 2, English uses the present progressive form of "to be" ("is being") rather than the simple present ("is").

In German passive constructions, essentially the same system applies, but the auxiliary verb used is a form of werden (rather than sein).

Study the following sentences:

1. Der Offizier fährt zum Restaurant. (active)
(The officer is driving to the restaurant.)
2. Der Offizier wird zum Restaurant gefahren.
(passive)
(The officer is being driven to the restaurant.)

The proper present tense form of werden: wird is used above, together with the past participle of the main verb fahren: gefahren.

In sentence 2, where is the past participle located?

The past participle is at the end of the sentence.

Note also that the single German passive construction may cover both the English simple passive ("is driven") and the progressive passive ("is being driven").

One final word on werden which is being introduced in this lesson as a third auxiliary verb next to haben and sein. You are already familiar with the form of werden as a verb of becoming in sentences such as:

Das Wetter wird schön.

(The weather is getting nice.)

Any temptation to use sein in place of werden in a passive voice construction might be dispelled if considering the following:

The door is closed. Die Tür ist geschlossen.
(Condition)

The door is being closed. Die Tür wird geschlossen.
(by someone - Process)

Now let us turn the page and first review a list of past participle forms.

The past participles of a number of German verbs were discussed and practiced in *Lessons 22* and 21. The following verbs will be used in this *Lesson*. Listen to and repeat both the infinitive and past participle forms:

<u>Infinitive</u>		<u>Past Participle</u>
abholen	(pick up)	abgeholt
antworten	(reply, answer)	geantwortet
anziehen	(dress)	angezogen
aufmachen	(open)	aufgemacht
baden	(bathe)	gebadet
benutzen	(use)	benutzt ¹
besuchen	(visit)	besucht ¹
brauchen	(need)	gebraucht
bringen	(bring, take)	gebracht
danken	(thank)	gedankt
essen	(eat)	gegessen
glauben	(believe)	geglaubt
grüssen	(greet)	gegrüsst
helfen	(help)	geholfen
kaufen	(buy)	gekauft

¹note omission of ge-prefix)

<u>Infinitive</u>		<u>Past Participle</u>
legen	(put, place, lay)	gelegt
lernen	(learn)	gelernt
lesen	(read)	gelesen
machen	(make)	gemacht
mitnehmen	(take along)	mitgenommen
parken	(park)	geparkt
rasieren	(shave)	rasiert ¹
rauchen	(smoke)	geraucht
reparieren	(repair, fix)	repariert ¹
rufen	(call)	gerufen
sagen	(say, tell)	gesagt
schreiben	(write)	geschrieben
stellen	(put, lay)	gestellt
suchen	(look for)	gesucht
trinken	(drink)	getrunken
verkaufen	(sell)	verkauft ¹
waschen	(wash)	gewaschen
zeigen	(show)	gezeigt

Study the above list until you are confident of the infinitive, past participle, and English meaning of each verb. ¹note omission of ge-prefix)

START THE TAPE.

For each of the verbs below, write the past participle on the line provided.

1. rauchen _____
2. danken _____
3. aufmachen _____
4. rasieren _____
5. schreiben _____
6. zeigen _____
7. machen _____
8. essen _____
9. parken _____
10. reparieren _____
11. abholen _____
12. suchen _____
13. brauchen _____
14. lernen _____
15. waschen _____
16. trinken _____
17. mitnehmen _____
18. anziehen _____
19. stellen _____
20. sagen _____
21. baden _____
22. legen _____
23. besuchen _____

24. bringen

25. kaufen

26. rufen

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. geraucht
- _____ 2. gedankt
- _____ 3. aufgemacht
- _____ 4. rasiert
- _____ 5. geschrieben
- _____ 6. gezeigt
- _____ 7. gemacht
- _____ 8. gegessen
- _____ 9. geparkt
- _____ 10. repariert
- _____ 11. abgeholt
- _____ 12. gesucht
- _____ 13. gebraucht
- _____ 14. gelernt
- _____ 15. gewaschen
- _____ 16. getrunken
- _____ 17. mitgenommen
- _____ 18. angezogen
- _____ 19. gestellt
- _____ 20. gesagt
- _____ 21. gebadet
- _____ 22. gelegt
- _____ 23. besucht

_____ 24. gebracht

_____ 25. gekauft

_____ 26. gerufen

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

- 27. lesen _____
- 28. grüssen _____
- 29. helfen _____
- 30. benutzen _____
- 31. verkaufen _____

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The present tense forms of werden are shown below in a typical passive context. Listen to and repeat the German, noticing the English translation.

Singular

Ich werde gefahren.	I am being driven.
Du wirst gefahren.	You [fam.] are being driven.
Sie werden gefahren.	You [formal] are being driven.
Er (sie, es) wird gefahren	He (she, it) is being driven.

Plural

Wir werden gefahren.	We are being driven.
Ihr werdet gefahren.	You [fam.] are being driven.
Sie werden gefahren.	You [formal]. are being driven.
Sie werden gefahren.	They are being driven.

In the next exercise, you will be asked to reproduce the German forms from memory. Stop the tape if you wish to study this page further.

- _____ 27. gelesen
- _____ 28. gegrüsst
- _____ 29. geholfen
- _____ 30. benutzt
- _____ 31. verkauft
- _____ START THE TAPE.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of werden.

1. Das Buch _____ gelesen.
2. Die Autos _____ repariert.
3. Der Brief _____ geschrieben.
4. Wir _____ gesucht.
5. Die Dame _____ gegrüsst.
6. Hans und Inge, ihr _____ abgeholt.
7. Sie [formal] _____ rasiert.
8. Der Sportwagen _____ geparkt.
9. Das Kind _____ angezogen.
10. Du _____ besucht.
11. Der Wein _____ getrunken.
12. Die langen Sätze _____ gelernt.
13. Ich _____ gerufen.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. wird
- _____ 2. werden
- _____ 3. wird
- _____ 4. werden
- _____ 5. wird
- _____ 6. werdet
- _____ 7. werden
- _____ 8. wird
- _____ 9. wird
- _____ 10. wirst
- _____ 11. wird
- _____ 12. werden
- _____ 13. werde

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of werden.

Die Bücher gebracht.

Du rasiert.

Das Auto in die Garage gefahren.

Die Kinder ins Bett gelegt.

Ich gegrüsst.

Der Film heute abend gezeigt.

Sie [formal] rasiert.

Inge von der Bahn abgeholt.

Die Fenster gewaschen.

Ihr ans Telefon gerufen.

Der Kaffee getrunken.

Wir gesucht.

Say the English equivalents of each of the following German sentences:

1. Das Haus wird repariert.

2. Die Briefe werden geschrieben.

3. Der Schüler wird von der Schule abgeholt.

4. Wird der Film heute gezeigt?

As you have probably noticed, word order in present tense passive sentences is similar to the perfect tense word order you learned in **Lessons 22** and **21**. Specifically, the past participle of the main verb is placed at the end of the clause, and the proper conjugated form of werden is placed in a position corresponding to that of the auxiliaries haben or sein in present perfect sentences. Note, however, that even though a past participle is used in these passive sentences, no "past time" meaning is involved.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of werden and the past participle on the basis of the given English.

8. Our roof is being repaired today. (reparieren)

Heute _____ unser Dach _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

1. We are being taken to the train. (bringen)

Wir _____ zum Zug _____.

2. A lot of beer is drunk in this tavern. (trinken)

In dieser Wirtschaft _____ viel Bier

_____.

3. Are the children being washed every night? (waschen)

_____ die Kinder jeden Abend _____?

4. The old lady is being visited every day. (besuchen)

Die alte Dame _____ jeden Tag _____.

5. Is the child being dressed now? (anziehen)

_____ das Kind jetzt _____?

6. Why isn't the food being put on the table? (stellen)

Warum _____ das Essen nicht auf den Tisch

_____?

7. Much is being learned in this German class. (lernen)

In dieser Deutschklasse _____ viel _____.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. werden gebracht
- _____ 2. wird getrunken
- _____ 3. Werden gewaschen
- _____ 4. wird besucht
- _____ 5. wird angezogen
- _____ 6. wird gestellt
- _____ 7. wird gelernt
- _____ 8. wird repariert

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of werden and the past participle on the basis of the given English.

1. Our house is being sold tomorrow. (verkaufen)
Unser Haus morgen
2. Is your bicycle being repaired? (reparieren)
.... dein Fahrrad?
3. The new film is being shown next week. (zeigen)
Der neue Film nächste Woche
4. Is Mr. Müller still being shaved every morning?
(rasieren)
.... Herr Müller immer noch jeden Morgen?
5. The child is being put to bed. (legen)
Das Kind ins Bett
6. Why are the cars being parked behind the church?
(parken)
Warum die Autos hinter der Kirche?
7. Their car is being washed every weekend.
(waschen)
Ihr Auto jedes Wochenende
8. Are you being picked up this afternoon? (abholen)
.... du heute nachmittag?

Write German sentences in the passive voice on the basis of the active voice sentences shown. Remember that the direct object (accusative) of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence, and that the agent is shown in a prepositional phrase using von.

1. Die Kinder essen den Kuchen.

2. Der Kellner bringt das Essen.

3. Hans bringt den Grossvater zum Bahnhof.

4. Peter parkt das Auto hinter dem Haus.

5. Frau Meyer kauft den teuren Mantel.

6. Die Soldaten grüssen die Offiziere.

7. Franz und Inge lesen die neuen Zeitschriften.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

In the preceding exercises, you practiced passive constructions in which the action but not the agent of the action is expressed in the sentence. For example, in the sentence:

Der Offizier wird zum Bahnhof gefahren.

(The officer is being driven to the train station.)

the action of "being driven" is expressed, but the agent (i.e., the person who is doing the driving) is not stated in the sentence.

When the agent is stated in the sentence, it is usually introduced by a prepositional phrase beginning with von.

Der Offizier wird von dem Soldaten zum Bahnhof gefahren.

(The officer is being driven to the train station by the soldier.)

Except for precedence of time expressions, the "von + agent" phrase is usually placed immediately after the inflected verb. Note also that since von is a preposition which requires the dative, any necessary dative case endings must be added:

Die Eltern werden von ihren Kindern besucht.

(The parents are being visited by their children.)

Das Kind wird jeden Abend von seiner Mutter gewaschen.

(The child is being washed by his mother every night.)

Heidi wird oft von ihrem Grossvater ins Kino mitgenommen.

(Heidi is often being taken to the movies by her grandfather.)

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Der Kuchen wird von den Kindern gegessen.

2. Das Essen wird von dem Kellner gebracht.

3. Der Grossvater wird von Hans zum Bahnhof gebracht.

4. Das Auto wird von Peter hinter dem Haus geparkt.

5. Der teure Mantel wird von Frau Meyer gekauft.

6. Die Offiziere werden von den Soldaten gegrüsst.

7. Die neuen Zeitschriften werden von Franz und Inge gelesen.

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Section 2

Passive Sentences Containing Modal Auxiliaries

In **Lesson 9**, you learned the use of modal auxiliary verbs in present tense sentences using the active voice. Consider the following two sentences:

Simple Construction:

Inge geht heute abend ins Kino.

(Inge is going to the movies tonight.)

Modal Auxiliary Construction:

Inge will heute abend ins Kino gehen.

(Inge wants to go to the movies tonight.)

As you learned in **Lesson 9**, the inflected auxiliary verb takes the position normally taken by the main verb, and the main verb is placed at the end of the sentence, in its infinitive form.

Now consider the two passive voice sentences below:

Simple Construction:

Der Arzt wird sofort gerufen.

(The doctor is being called right away.)

Modal Auxiliary Construction:

Der Arzt muss sofort gerufen werden.

(The doctor must be called right away.)

As you can see, the modal auxiliary verb in a passive voice sentence takes the place of the inflected form of werden, and the infinitive form, werden, is placed at the end of the sentence, immediately after the past participle.

On this basis, add the modal auxiliary wollen to the passive sentence below:

Herr Müller wird vom Bahnhof abgeholt.

(Mr. Müller is being picked up from the train station.)

NOTES

The correct answer is:

Herr Müller will vom Bahnhof abgeholt werden.

How would you translate this sentence into English?

Listen to and repeat the following German sentences, paying special attention to word order and the English translations.

1. Der Offizier will von dem Soldaten zum Bahnhof gefahren werden.

(The officer wants to be driven to the train station by the soldier.)

2. Kleine Kinder dürfen nicht in kaltem Wasser gebadet werden.

(Small children may not be bathed in cold water.)

3. Dieser alte Sportwagen kann nicht mehr repariert werden.

(This old sports car cannot be repaired any more.)

4. Die kranken Soldaten müssen zum Arzt gebracht werden.

(The sick soldiers have to be taken to the doctor.)

5. Diese Sätze sollen bis morgen gelernt werden.

(These sentences are supposed to be learned by tomorrow.)

Rewrite the following passive sentences so as to incorporate the appropriate form of the modal auxiliary verb in parentheses. For example:

You see: Das Auto wird repariert. (müssen)
(The car is being repaired.)

You write: Das Auto muss repariert werden.
(The car must be repaired.)

1. Die Gläser werden gewaschen. (sollen)
(The glasses are being washed.)

(The glasses are supposed to be washed.)

2. Wirst du vom Bahnhof abgeholt? (wollen)
(Are you being picked up from the train station?)

?
(Do you want to be picked up from the train station?)

3. Er wird ans Telefon gerufen. (müssen)
(He is being called to the telephone.)

(He must be called to the telephone.)

4. Diese alten Bücher werden nicht mehr verkauft. (können)
(These old books are no longer being sold.)

(These old books can no longer be sold.)

5. Die Schüler werden ins Museum mitgenommen. (wollen)
(The students are being taken along to the museum.)

(The students want to be taken along to the museum.)

6. Herr Meyer wird vom Hotel abgeholt. (müssen)
(Mr. Meyer is being picked up at the hotel.)

(Mr. Meyer must be picked up at the hotel.)

7. Der Kuchen wird jetzt gegessen. (können)
(The cake is now being eaten.)

(The cake can now be eaten.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

1. Die Gläser sollen gewaschen werden.

_____ ?

2. Willst du vom Bahnhof abgeholt werden?

_____ ?

3. Er muss ans Telefon gerufen werden.

_____ .

4. Diese alten Bücher können nicht mehr verkauft werden.

_____ .

5. Die Schüler wollen ins Museum mitgenommen werden.

_____ .

6. Herr Meyer muss vom Hotel abgeholt werden.

_____ .

7. Der Kuchen kann jetzt gegessen werden.

_____ .

START THE TAPE.

Restate orally the following passive sentences so as to incorporate the appropriate form of the modal auxiliary verb in parentheses.

1. Der Lehrer wird nicht aus der Klasse geholt. (dürfen)
2. Warum wird euer Auto nicht repariert? (können)
3. Der Wein wird geholt. (müssen)
4. Das Kind wird von der Mutter angezogen. (sollen)
5. Warum wird das Fenster nicht aufgemacht? (dürfen)
6. Die Schüler werden morgens immer gerufen. (wollen)
7. Unser Freund wird von uns zur Stadt gebracht. (müssen)

Say the English for each of the sentences below.

1. Karl will von Hans abgeholt werden.
2. Dieser Brief muss sofort gelesen werden.
3. Dieser alte Tisch kann nicht repariert werden.
4. Das Essen soll aufs Zimmer gebracht werden.

Write complete German sentences on the basis of the given English, using the modal auxiliary verb and the main verb shown in parentheses.

1. The car cannot be parked behind the church. (können - parken)

2. The officers must be greeted by the soldiers. (müssen - grüssen)

3. Do you [fam., sing.] want to be picked up tomorrow morning? (wollen - abholen)

4. The sick child does not want to be taken to the doctor. (wollen - bringen)

5. These letters are supposed to be written today. (sollen - schreiben)

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Das Auto kann nicht hinter der Kirche geparkt werden.

2. Die Offiziere müssen von den Soldaten begrüßt werden.

3. Willst du morgen früh abgeholt werden?

4. Das kranke Kind will nicht zum Arzt gebracht werden.

5. Diese Briefe sollen heute geschrieben werden.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English, using the modal auxiliary verb and the main verb shown in parentheses.

1. These old chairs cannot be repaired any more.
(können - reparieren)
2. This book is supposed to be picked up by a student.
(sollen - abholen)
3. The cars must be parked in the garage.
(müssen - parken)
4. This magazine may not be read by children.
(dürfen - lesen)
5. Mr. Müller doesn't want to be shaved.
(wollen - rasieren)

NOTES

Section 3

The Passive with Dative Objects;

Passive Equivalents of Active Sentences with "Man"

Consider the following two sentences in the active and passive voice respectively:

Der Soldat wäscht den Sportwagen.

(The soldier is washing the sports car.)

Der Sportwagen wird von dem Soldaten gewaschen.

(The sports car is being washed by the soldier.)

You will note that the direct object of the active sentence has become the subject of the corresponding passive sentence. Indeed, in all of the passive sentences you have encountered so far, the subject of the passive sentence could be restated as the direct object of an active sentence. For example:

Passive Sentence:

Der Arzt wird von Herrn Meyer gerufen.

(The doctor is being called by Mr. Meyer.)

Active Sentence:

Herr Meyer ruft den Arzt.

Passive Sentence:

Der Wein muss heute von Hans geholt werden.

(The wine has to be picked up today by Hans.)

Active Sentence:

Hans muss heute den Wein holen.

Now consider the following active sentence:

Der Lehrer hilft dem Schüler.

(The teacher helps the student.)

In what case is the noun phrase dem Schüler in the above sentence?

NOTES

It is the in the dative case, since it is the object of the verb helfen, one of those verbs which are said to "require the dative."

Now suppose that the speaker wished to convey the same information using a passive sentence, that is, to use the German equivalent of:

The student is being helped by the teacher.

Note carefully the case of the underlined words in the corresponding German sentence:

Dem Schüler wird vom Lehrer geholfen.

As you can see, the dative case continues to be used in the passive sentence. The words Dem Schüler are NOT the subject of the passive sentence, but serve as the dative object by virtue of the fact that the verb helfen demands the dative case. For this reason, there is no grammatical subject at all in the German sentence, even though the English sentence "The student is being helped" might lead you to think so.

With present tense sentences using a dative object, the only possible form of werden is the third person singular ("er, sie, es") form, wird. The verb wird should be thought of as agreeing with an indefinite (and unchanging) subject which is not stated in the sentence, and NOT with the dative object. Thus, the two sentences:

The man is being helped.

The men are being helped.

would be translated:

Dem Mann wird geholfen.

Den Männern wird geholfen.

Rewrite in the passive voice each of the following active voice sentences, being careful to note that a dative object is involved in each instance.

1. Der Offizier dankt dem Soldaten.

2. Der Junge antwortet der Mutter.

3. Der Arzt hilft uns sofort.

4. Die Schüler schreiben dem Lehrer.

5. Das Kind glaubt den Eltern.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Dem Soldaten wird von dem Offizier gedankt.

2. Der Mutter wird von dem Jungen geantwortet.

3. Uns wird sofort von dem Arzt geholfen.

4. Dem Lehrer wird von den Schülern geschrieben.

5. Den Eltern wird von dem Kind geglaubt.

START THE TAPE.

You may already have encountered the German indefinite pronoun man in sentences such as:

Man trinkt viel Bier in München.

There is no word-for-word English equivalent for man. For example, the sentence above might be translated:

One drinks a lot of beer in Munich.

They drink a lot of beer in Munich.

People drink a lot of beer in Munich., and so forth;

or, the English may switch from an active voice (as in the sentences above) to a passive voice, omitting the idea of man altogether:

A lot of beer is drunk in Munich.

In German, it is possible either to use an active sentence with man or to transform the sentence into the passive voice, in which case man is omitted. Listen to and repeat the following German sentence pairs, noticing the change from active to passive voice. A typical English translation is given, covering both the active voice man sentence and the transformed passive voice sentence, but you should remember, as was pointed out before, that several English alternatives are possible.

1. Man schreibt die Briefe.

Die Briefe werden geschrieben.

(The letters are being written.)

2. Einem hübschen Mädchen hilft man immer.

Einem hübschen Mädchen wird immer geholfen.

(People always help a pretty girl.)

3. Man ruft sofort den Arzt.

Der Arzt wird sofort gerufen.

(They are calling the doctor at once.)

4. Man antwortet ihm nicht.

Ihm wird nicht geantwortet.

(He is not being answered.)

5. Man dankt ihnen für das Geschenk.

Ihnen wird für das Geschenk gedankt.

(They are being thanked for the present.)

NOTES

Rewrite so as to produce passive voice sentences on the basis of the active sentences using man. Note that both accusative objects (which become the grammatical subject of the passive sentence) and dative objects (which continue to be dative objects) are used. Remember also that the only possible form of werden with dative objects is wird.

1. Man ruft die Kinder.

_____.
(The children are being called.)

2. Man hilft den armen Frauen nicht.

_____.
(The poor women are not being helped.)

3. Man parkt die Autos.

_____.
(The cars are being parked.)

4. Man glaubt den Schülern.

_____.
(The students are believed.)

5. Man liest die alten Bücher nicht mehr.

_____.
(The old books are not being read any more.)

6. Man dankt ihnen.

_____.
(They are being thanked.)

7. Nach dem Essen raucht man eine Zigarre.

_____.
(After dinner one smokes a cigar.)

8. Man sucht die Kinder.

_____.
(The children are being looked for.)

9. Man bringt ihnen das Essen.

_____.
(They are being brought the meal.)

10. Man ruft ihn ans Telefon.

_____.
(He is being called to the phone.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Die Kinder werden gerufen.

2. Den armen Frauen wird nicht geholfen.

3. Die Autos werden geparkt.

4. Den Schülern wird geglaubt.

5. Die alten Bücher werden nicht mehr gelesen.

6. Ihnen wird gedankt.

7. Eine Zigarre wird nach dem Essen geraucht.

8. Die Kinder werden gesucht.

9. Ihnen wird das Essen gebracht.

10. Er wird ans Telefon gerufen.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, changing the active sentences with man into passive sentences.

NOTES

1. Man hilft der Dame.
(The lady is being helped.)
2. Man bringt den alten Mann nach Hause.
(The old man is being taken home.)
3. Man raucht die teuren Zigarren.
(The expensive cigars are being smoked.)
4. Man grüsst die Offiziere.
(The officers are being saluted.)
5. Man antwortet ihnen nicht.
(They are not being answered.)
6. Man trinkt das kalte Bier.
(The cold beer is being drunk.)
7. Man besucht das Museum täglich.
(The museum is being visited daily.)
8. Man liebt die Mädchen.
(The girls are being loved.)
9. Man legt die Kinder ins Bett.
(The children are being put to bed.)
10. Man braucht diese Zeitung nicht mehr.
(This newspaper is not needed anymore.)

LESSON 29

Imperfect Tense I

This and the following **Lesson (30)** will teach you the formation and use of the imperfect tense in German. The present module deals with the imperfect tense of regular (so-called "weak") verbs and the modal verbs. **Lesson 30** deals with the imperfect tense of irregular ("strong" and "mixed") verbs, and the verbs haben, sein, and werden.

As an introduction to both of these **Lessons**, we will briefly characterize some of the situations in which German speakers or writers tend to use the imperfect tense. It will be useful for you to consider these observations in comparison to the use of the present perfect tense, the other major past tense in German (**Lessons 22** and 21).

There are no hard and fast rules governing the use of the imperfect tense in German, although it is possible to identify certain broad principles which underlie the use of this tense by native speakers.

When a series of past events is related in spoken or written form, German tends to use the imperfect tense, as in the following example. Note both the series of events taking place and the fact that all of the verbs are in the imperfect tense.

Er brauchte das Buch und suchte es, aber er fand es nicht und kaufte sich ein neues.

(He needed the book and looked for it, but he did not find it and bought a new one.)

Written German tends to use the imperfect tense to relate past events generally (even when the events do not form a related series as is the case in the sample given above).

Section 1

Formation of the Imperfect Tense (Weak Verbs)

As you already know, the present tense of German verbs is formed by adding certain endings to the infinitive stem. The same principle is followed in forming the imperfect tense, except that a different pattern of endings is used.

By way of review, you will remember that the infinitive stem of a given verb can be found by dropping the -en (or in a few cases, -n) ending of the infinitive.

Underline the stem¹ of each of the following verbs:

1. reisen
2. interessieren
3. dauern
4. kaufen
5. machen

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

¹For the remainder of this **Lesson**, the single term "stem" will refer to the infinitive stem, unless otherwise indicated.

The correct answers are:

NOTES

1. reisen
2. interessieren
3. dauern
4. kaufen
5. machen

START THE TAPE.

The following table shows the imperfect tense forms of a typical regular ("weak") verb, kaufen. Listen to the imperfect forms and repeat them aloud in the pauses provided. Note that certain imperfect tense endings are added to the stem of the verb.

ich kauf <u>te</u>	I bought
du kauf <u>test</u>	you [fam., sing.] bought
er, sie, es kauf <u>te</u>	he, she, it bought
wir kauf <u>ten</u>	we bought
ihr kauf <u>tet</u>	you [fam., pl.] bought
sie kauf <u>ten</u>	they bought
Sie kauf <u>ten</u>	you [formal, sing. and pl.] bought

Stop your tape and study these imperfect tense forms until you feel you know the complete pattern of endings. Then turn the page for a written exercise.

Write the appropriate imperfect tense form of kaufen.

1. ich _____
2. du _____
3. er _____
4. wir _____
5. ihr _____
6. sie [pl.] _____
7. Sie _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Listen to and repeat the following imperfect tense forms, paying particular attention to the pattern of endings. In the course of this exercise, you should become familiar with the sound of the imperfect tense forms in the various persons.

besuchen (stem: besuch-)

ich besuchte	wir besuchten
du besuchtest	ihr besuchtet
er [sie, es] besuchte	sie besuchten
	Sie besuchten

glauben (stem: glaub-)

ich glaubte	wir glaubten
du glaubtest	ihr glaubtet
er [sie, es] glaubte	sie glaubten
	Sie glaubten

grüssen (stem: grüss-)

ich grüsste	wir grüssten
du grüsstest	ihr grüsstet
er [sie, es] grüsste	sie grüssten
	Sie grüssten

tanzen (stem: tanz-)

ich tanzte	wir tanzten
du tanztest	ihr tanztet
er [sie, es] tanzte	sie tanzten
	Sie tanzten

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. kaufte
- _____ 2. kauftest
- _____ 3. kaufte
- _____ 4. kauften
- _____ 5. kauftet
- _____ 6. kauften
- _____ 7. kauften

NOTES

For each of the verbs below, write the appropriate imperfect tense form on the lines provided. For example:

You see: (besuchen) wir _____

You write: (besuchen) wir besuchten

1. (kaufen) er _____
2. (dauern) es _____
3. (rauchen) sie [pl.] _____
4. (schicken) wir _____
5. (lernen) du _____
6. (sich amüsieren) ich _____ mich
7. (grüssen) Sie [formal] _____
8. (reisen) ich _____
9. (besuchen) sie [sing.] _____
10. (tanzen) du _____
11. (zeigen) es _____
12. (suchen) er _____
13. (schenken) ihr _____
14. (reparieren) wir _____
15. (machen) Sie _____
16. (parken) ich _____

17. (wohnen) er _____
18. (abholen) wir _____ ab
19. (zumachen) sie [sing.] _____ zu
20. (brauchen) ich _____
21. (sich interessieren) wir _____ uns
22. (sagen) er _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. kaufte
- _____ 2. dauerte
- _____ 3. rauchten
- _____ 4. schickten
- _____ 5. lernstest
- _____ 6. amüsierte
- _____ 7. grüßten
- _____ 8. reiste
- _____ 9. besuchte
- _____ 10. tanztest
- _____ 11. zeigte
- _____ 12. suchte
- _____ 13. schenktet
- _____ 14. reparierten
- _____ 15. machten
- _____ 16. parkte
- _____ 17. wohnte
- _____ 18. holten

- _____ 19. machte
- _____ 20. brauchte
- _____ 21. interessierten
- _____ 22. sagte

START THE TAPE.

Say the appropriate imperfect tense form. For example:

You see: (kaufen) du

You say: du kauftest

- 1. (brauchen) wir
- 2. (sich interessieren) er sich
- 3. (glauben) du
- 4. (schicken) sie [pl.]
- 5. (parken) wir
- 6. (zumachen) du zu
- 7. (sagen) sie [sing.]
- 8. (wohnen) er
- 9. (zeigen) ich
- 10. (rauchen) ihr
- 11. (suchen) Sie
- 12. (lernen) ich

13. (abholen) sie [sing.] ab

14. (brauchen) du

Whenever the stem of the verb ends in -d or -t, an -e- is inserted between the stem and the imperfect tense ending. For example, consider the verb baden. The stem of this verb is bad-. If the -e- were not inserted before the imperfect endings were added, combinations would be produced which would be very hard to pronounce:

- (*) ich badte
- (*) du badtest
- (*) er badte, etc.

Or a verb whose stem ends in -t:

- (*) ich antwortte
- (*) du antworttest, etc.

The same situation arises with verbs whose stem ends in a succession of consonants, of which the last is -m or -n. For example, the stem of öffnen is öffn-, with the final consonant -n. This would lead to pronunciation difficulties as follows:

- (*) ich öffnte

As you recall from similar solutions in present tense and past participle forms, here again the helping vowel -e- is inserted to facilitate pronunciation:

ich badete
du badetest, etc.

ich antwortete
du antwortetest

ich öffnete
du öffnetest, etc.

Write the appropriate imperfect tense form for each of the verbs below:

1. (baden) sie [pl.] _____
2. (öffnen) ihr _____
3. (reden) Sie _____
4. (arbeiten) du _____
5. (antworten) ich _____
6. (warten) er _____
7. (öffnen) wir _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. badeten
_____ 2. öffnetet
_____ 3. redeten
_____ 4. arbeitetest
_____ 5. antwortete
_____ 6. wartete
_____ 7. öffneten

START THE TAPE.

Say the appropriate imperfect tense form.

1. (antworten) sie [sing.]
2. (reden) wir
3. (arbeiten) ich
4. (baden) ihr
5. (öffnen) er
6. (antworten) Sie
7. (warten) sie [plur.]

It is important for you to remember that German has only a single way of expressing the imperfect tense, even though English has several alternative ways of expressing this tense concept. Depending on the context, the intended emphasis, and various stylistic factors, a native English speaker might use any one of several roughly equivalent English formulations of the same imperfect tense concept. For example, the single German sentence:

Sie arbeiteten die ganze Woche.

might be expressed in English as:

They worked all week.

They were working all week.

They used to work all week.

They did work all week.

The following exercises combine the regular verb forms you have learned so far in this **Lesson**, including those which add -e- between the stem and the imperfect ending.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense form of the verb shown in parentheses. Note that various English translations can be used for the single German imperfect form.

1. Sie _____ die ganze Nacht. (tanzen)
(She danced all night.)
2. _____ Vater immer solche starken Zigarren?
(rauchen)
(Did father always smoke such strong cigars?)
3. Wir _____ sein Gepäck vom Bahnhof _____.
(abholen)
(We picked up his luggage from the train station.)
4. Wie lange _____ der Film? (dauern)
(How long did the movie last?)
5. Ich _____ mein Auto immer hinter dem Haus.
(parken)
(I always parked my car behind the house.)
6. Die Mutter _____ ihr Kind in der ganzen Stadt.
(suchen)
(The mother looked for her child all over town.)
8. Wir _____ zwei Monate durch das Land.
(reisen)
(We traveled around the country for two months.)
9. Ihr _____ uns jedes Wochenende. (besuchen)
(You used to visit us every weekend.)
10. Er _____ lange Zeit in München. (wohnen)
(He lived in Munich for a long time.)
11. Frau Müller _____ jeden Abend alle Türen und Fenster _____. (zumachen)
(Mrs. Müller closed all the doors and windows every night.)
12. Wann _____ du Deutsch? (lernen)
(When were you learning German?)
13. Hans und Inge _____ ihren Eltern die Stadt.
(zeigen)
(Hans and Inge were showing their parents the town.)
14. Warum _____ du nicht auf seine Fragen?
(antworten)
(Why weren't you answering his questions?)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. tanzte
- _____ 2. Rauchte
- _____ 3. holten ab
- _____ 4. dauerte
- _____ 5. parkte
- _____ 6. suchte

- _____ 8. reisten
- _____ 9. besuchtet
- _____ 10. wohnte
- _____ 11. machte zu
- _____ 12. lernstest
- _____ 13. zeigten
- _____ 14. antwortetest

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate imperfect tense form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Im Sommer sie am Strand.
(sich amüsieren)
(In the summer they did have fun at the beach.)
2. Letztes Jahr ich kein Auto. (brauchen)
(Last year I didn't need a car.)
3. Sie ihn jeden Morgen. (grüssen)
(She greeted him every morning.)
4. Meine Eltern mir jeden Monat etwas zu essen.
(schicken)
(Every month, my parents sent me something to eat.)
5. Jedes Jahr wir eine grosse Reise. (machen)
(We took a big trip every year.)
6. Peter seiner Frau nichts von seiner Arbeit.
(sagen)
(Peter said nothing to his wife about his work.)
7. Hans dem armen Mann etwas zum Anziehen.
(kaufen)
(Hans bought the poor man something to wear.)
8. Vor zwei Jahren ihr noch für Fussball.
(sich interessieren für)
(Two years ago, you were still interested in soccer.)

9. Sie ein neues Haus. (sich kaufen)
(They bought a new house.)
10. Ich einfach nicht, was sie sagte. (glauben)
(I simply didn't believe what she said.)
11. Sie Ihre Eltern oft? (besuchen)
(Did you often visit your parents?)

NOTES

Section 2

Imperfect Tense of the Modal Auxiliaries

The imperfect tense forms of the modal auxiliary verbs können, müssen, dürfen, wollen, and sollen are quite easy to learn. In all cases, the imperfect endings that you learned in the preceding section are added to the stem of the verb, with the slight additional change that modals with an umlaut in the infinitive (können, müssen, dürfen) change to non-umlaut vowels in all forms of the imperfect. For example, the stem of können is könn-, but the umlaut vowel is changed in the imperfect to form konn-. To this are added the imperfect endings -te, -test, and so forth, as shown below.

Listen to and repeat each of the following imperfect tense forms, paying particular attention to the sound of these forms.

können

ich konnte	wir konnten
du konntest	ihr konntet
er [sie, es] konnte	sie konnten
	Sie konnten

müssen

ich musste	wir mussten
du musstest	ihr musstet
er [sie, es] musste	sie mussten
	Sie mussten

dürfen

ich durfte	wir durften
du durftest	ihr durftet
er [sie, es] durfte	sie durften
	Sie durften

wollen

ich wollte	wir wollten
du wolltest	ihr wolltet
er [sie, es] wollte	sie wollten
	Sie wollten

sollen

ich sollte	wir sollten
du solltest	ihr solltet
er [sie, es] sollte	sie sollten
	Sie sollten

¹The verb mögen, whose present tense derivative form (möchte) is often used as a modal auxiliary, is rarely used in this way in the imperfect, and is thus not included in the exercises of this section.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense form of the modal auxiliary verbs given below.

1. (sollen) er _____
2. (müssen) sie [pl.] _____
3. (dürfen) ihr _____
4. (können) du _____
5. (wollen) ich _____
6. (müssen) wir _____
7. (sollen) sie [sing.] _____
8. (dürfen) du _____
9. (wollen) es _____
10. (können) sie [pl.] _____
11. (müssen) ich _____
12. (dürfen) er _____
13. (sollen) wir _____
14. (können) Sie _____
15. (wollen) ihr _____

Say the German, supplying the appropriate imperfect form of the modal auxiliary verbs given below.

1. (können) Sie
2. (wollen) wir
3. (müssen) sie [sing.]
4. (sollen) du
5. (dürfen) es
6. (können) sie [sing.]
7. (wollen) er
8. (müssen) Sie
9. (dürfen) wir
10. (sollen) sie [pl.]
11. (müssen) es
12. (dürfen) ihr
13. (sollen) wir
14. (können) du
15. (wollen) Sie

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. sollte
- _____ 2. mussten
- _____ 3. durftet
- _____ 4. konntest
- _____ 5. wollte
- _____ 6. mussten
- _____ 7. sollte
- _____ 8. durftest
- _____ 9. wollte
- _____ 10. konnten
- _____ 11. musste
- _____ 12. durfte
- _____ 13. sollten
- _____ 14. konnten
- _____ 15. wollten

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense form of the modal auxiliary verbs in parentheses.

1. Im Klassenzimmer _____ man nie rauchen.
(dürfen)

(In the classroom one was never allowed to smoke.)

2. Er suchte seinen Bruder, aber er _____ ihn nicht finden. (können)
(He looked for his brother but couldn't find him.)

3. Da wir kein Geld hatten, _____ wir zu Fuss gehen. (müssen)
(Because we had no money, we had to go on foot.)

4. Sie _____ uns einfach nicht glauben. (wollen)
(They simply wouldn't believe us.)

5. Hans _____ Inge abholen, aber sein Auto war kaputt. (sollen)
(Hans was supposed to pick up Inge but his car was not running.)

6. _____ du gestern ausgehen? (dürfen)
(Were you allowed to go out yesterday?)

7. Damals _____ Professor Schulz das Haus kaufen, aber jetzt interessiert er sich nicht mehr dafür.
(wollen)

(At that time, Professor Schulz wanted to buy the house, but now he isn't interested any more.)

8. Diesmal _____ wir unseren Nachbarn nicht besuchen. (können)

(We couldn't visit our neighbor this time.)

9. Ich _____ gestern lange auf Hans warten.
(müssen)

(Yesterday, I had to wait for Hans a long time.)

10. Peter _____ gestern abend seine Hausaufgaben machen. (sollen)

(Peter was supposed to do his homework yesterday.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. durfte
- _____ 2. konnte
- _____ 3. mussten
- _____ 4. wollten
- _____ 5. sollte
- _____ 6. Durftest
- _____ 7. wollte
- _____ 8. konnten
- _____ 9. musste
- _____ 10. sollte

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of the modal auxiliary verbs in parentheses.

1. Hans und Inge letztes Wochenende schwer arbeiten. (müssen)
(Hans and Inge had to work hard last weekend.)
2. ihr Peter besuchen? (wollen)
(Did you want to visit Peter?)
3. Vor zwei Jahren man für fünfzig Pfennig ein Päckchen Zigaretten kaufen. (können)
(Two years ago, you could buy a pack of cigarettes for fifty pfennigs.)
4. Der neue Lehrer gestern kommen. (sollen)
(The new teacher was supposed to come yesterday.)
5. In ihren Ferien Ingrid mit ihrer Freundin nach Berlin fahren. (dürfen)
(During her vacation, Ingrid was allowed to go to Berlin with her girl friend.)
6. Ich mir gestern abend das Haar waschen.
(müssen)
(I had to wash my hair last night.)
7. Mein Bruder immer Arzt werden. (wollen)
(My brother always wanted to become a doctor.)

8. Da es regnete, wir nicht an den Strand gehen. (können)

(Because it was raining, we couldn't go to the beach.)

9. Meine Eltern letztes Wochenende kommen. (sollen)

(My parents were supposed to come last weekend.)

10. Die Soldaten sonntags lange schlafen. (dürfen)

(The soldiers were allowed to sleep late on Sundays.)

Translate the English sentences below into German, using the appropriate imperfect tense forms of the verbs in parentheses. Pay particular attention to word order.

1. Hans used to work every summer. (arbeiten)

_____.

2. They had to leave their dog at home. (müssen - lassen)

_____.

3. Mr. Müller always smoked strong cigars. (rauchen)

_____.

4. I gave my friend [masc.] a book. (schenken)

_____.

5. His parents had to call the doctor. (müssen)

_____.

6. Karl was always interested in sports cars. (sich interessieren für)

_____.

7. Professor Schulz opened the window. (öffnen)

_____.

8. My brother couldn't come yesterday. (können - kommen)

_____.

9. We repaired the car. (reparieren)

_____.

10. Mr. Meyer made a long trip. (machen)

_____.

11. The dinner didn't last long. (dauern)

_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Hans arbeitete jeden Sommer.

2. Sie mussten ihren Hund zu Hause lassen.

3. Herr Müller rauchte immer starke Zigarren.

4. Ich schenkte meinem Freund ein Buch.

5. Seine Eltern mussten den Arzt rufen.

6. Karl interessierte sich immer für Sportwagen.

7. Professor Schulz öffnete das Fenster.

8. Mein Bruder konnte gestern nicht kommen.

9. Wir reparierten das Auto.

10. Herr Meyer machte eine lange Reise.

11. Das Essen dauerte nicht lange.

START THE TAPE.

Imperfect Tense II

This is the second of two **Lessons** on the German imperfect tense. The following sections are included:

1. Imperfect Tense of Haben, Sein, and Werden
2. Imperfect Tense of Strong Verbs
3. Imperfect Tense of Mixed Verbs

1. Imperfect Tense of "Haben," "Sein," and "Werden"

The verbs haben, sein, and werden have imperfect tense forms which can be used in the same way as other imperfect tense verbs. For example:

haben: Hans hatte nie Glück.
(Hans never had any luck.)

sein: Wir waren letztes Jahr in Deutschland.
(We were in Germany last year.)

werden: Er wurde Arzt.
(He became a doctor.)

In addition, these three verbs can be used in the imperfect tense as auxiliary verbs. The imperfect tense of haben and sein is used in past perfect tense constructions such as the following:

haben: Er hatte lange gearbeitet.
(He had worked a long time.)

sein: Wir waren schon nach Hause gegangen.
(We had already gone home.)

The past perfect tense will be presented in detail in **Lesson 34**.

The imperfect tense of werden is used to convey a past time meaning in passive constructions.

werden: Professor Meyer wurde ans Telefon gerufen.
(Professor Meyer was called to the phone.)

The imperfect tense of passive voice sentences will be covered in **Lesson 37**.

In this **lesson**, the imperfect tense forms of haben, sein, and werden will be used only as main verbs, but a thorough knowledge of these forms will also aid your work on **Lessons 34** and **37**, in which these verbs are used as auxiliaries.

Listen to and repeat each of the imperfect tense forms of haben shown below. You will note that the imperfect of haben has the regular endings you studied in **Lesson 29**, which are added to hat-:

ich hatte	wir hatten
du hattest	ihr hattet
er [sie, es] hatte	sie hatten
	Sie hatten

Study these forms until you are confident of their pronunciation and spelling, then turn the page for exercises on them.

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense form of haben.

1. es _____
2. Sie _____
3. ihr _____
4. du _____
5. ich _____
6. wir _____
7. sie [pl.] _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say the appropriate imperfect tense form of haben.

1. er
2. wir
3. sie [pl.]
4. ich
5. ihr
6. du
7. Sie

The imperfect tense forms of sein are produced by adding certain endings to war-. However, these are NOT the regular (weak) verb endings you learned in the preceding module, but are instead a different series of endings which are added to the so-called "strong" verbs which you will study in Section 2 of this Lesson.

Listen to and repeat the imperfect forms of sein below, noticing especially the underlined endings, which will be common to all of the strong verbs in the next section. The first person singular and third person singular (i.e. the "ich" and "er, sie, es" forms) have what is known as a "zero" ending.

ich war (zero ending)

du warst

er [sie, es] war (zero ending)

wir waren

ihr wart

sie waren

Sie waren

Study the above forms, then turn the page for exercises.

START THE TAPE.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. hatte
- _____ 2. hatten
- _____ 3. hattet
- _____ 4. hattest
- _____ 5. hatte
- _____ 6. hatten
- _____ 7. hatten

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect forms of sein.

1. ich _____
2. du _____
3. er [sie, es] _____
4. wir _____
5. ihr _____
6. sie [pl.] _____
7. Sie _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Say the appropriate imperfect forms of sein.

1. er
2. wir
3. du
4. Sie
5. ich
6. ihr
7. sie [pl.]

The imperfect tense of werden is formed as follows.

Listen and repeat:

- ich wurde (not -te)
du wurdest (not -test, etc.)
er [sie, es] wurde
wir wurden
ihr wurdet
sie wurden
Sie wurden

Study the above forms carefully, then turn the page for exercises. **START THE TAPE.**

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect form of werden.

1. ich _____
2. du _____
3. er [sie, es] _____
4. wir _____
5. ihr _____
6. sie [pl.] _____
7. Sie _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. war
- _____ 2. warst
- _____ 3. war
- _____ 4. waren
- _____ 5. wart
- _____ 6. waren
- _____ 7. waren

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. wurde
- _____ 2. wurdest
- _____ 3. wurde
- _____ 4. wurden
- _____ 5. wurdet
- _____ 6. wurden
- _____ 7. wurden

Fill in the appropriate imperfect tense form of werden.

- 1. ihr _____
- 2. Sie _____
- 3. du _____
- 4. ich _____
- 5. er _____
- 6. wir _____
- 7. sie [pl.] _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. wurdet
- _____ 2. wurden
- _____ 3. wurdest
- _____ 4. wurde
- _____ 5. wurde
- _____ 6. wurden
- _____ 7. wurden

START THE TAPE.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect form of haben, sein or werden, on the basis of the infinitives given in parentheses.

1. (werden) ich _____
2. (haben) er _____
3. (sein) sie [pl.] _____
4. (haben) du _____
5. (sein) wir _____
6. (werden) Sie _____
7. (haben) ihr _____
8. (werden) sie [sing.] _____
9. (sein) ihr _____
10. (haben) Sie _____
11. (sein) du _____
12. (werden) wir _____
13. (haben) ich _____
14. (werden) sie [pl.] _____
15. (haben) es _____
16. (werden) du _____
17. (sein) Sie _____
18. (sein) ich _____

19. (haben) wir _____
20. (werden) ihr _____
21. (haben) sie [sing.] _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. wurde
- _____ 2. hatte
- _____ 3. waren
- _____ 4. hattest
- _____ 5. waren
- _____ 6. wurden
- _____ 7. hattet
- _____ 8. wurde
- _____ 9. wart
- _____ 10. hatten
- _____ 11. warst
- _____ 12. wurden
- _____ 13. hatte
- _____ 14. wurden
- _____ 15. hatte
- _____ 16. wurdest
- _____ 17. waren
- _____ 18. war

- _____ 19. hatten
- _____ 20. wurdet
- _____ 21. hatte

NOTES

Fill in the blanks as in the preceding exercise.

1. (werden) wir _____
2. (haben) er _____
3. (sein) sie [sing.] _____
4. (werden) ich _____
5. (sein) ihr _____
6. (haben) Sie _____
7. (sein) du _____
8. (werden) sie [pl.] _____
9. (haben) wir _____
10. (sein) Sie _____
11. (werden) ihr _____
12. (haben) ich _____
13. (sein) wir _____
14. (werden) es _____
15. (haben) sie [pl.] _____
16. (sein) ich _____
17. (haben) ihr _____
18. (werden) du _____
19. (sein) sie [pl.] _____

20. (werden) er _____
21. (haben) du _____

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. wurden
- _____ 2. hatte
- _____ 3. war
- _____ 4. wurde
- _____ 5. wart
- _____ 6. hatten
- _____ 7. warst
- _____ 8. wurden
- _____ 9. hatten
- _____ 10. waren
- _____ 11. wurdet
- _____ 12. hatte
- _____ 13. waren
- _____ 14. wurde
- _____ 15. hatten
- _____ 16. war
- _____ 17. hattet
- _____ 18. wurdest
- _____ 19. waren

- _____ 20. wurde
- _____ 21. hattest

START THE TAPE.

Say the appropriate imperfect tense form of haben, sein, or werden on the basis of the infinitive given in parentheses.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. (haben) er | 12. (werden) wir |
| 2. (sein) sie [pl.] | 13. (sein) sie [sing.] |
| 3. (werden) du | 14. (werden) Sie |
| 4. (sein) ich | 15. (haben) ich |
| 5. (haben) ihr | 16. (sein) ihr |
| 6. (werden) es | 17. (werden) sie [sing.] |
| 7. (sein) wir | 18. (haben) du |
| 8. (haben) Sie | 19. (sein) Sie |
| 9. (werden) ich | 20. (werden) wir |
| 10. (sein) du | 21. (haben) sie [pl.] |
| 11. (haben) wir | |

The next exercises use haben, sein, and werden in complete sentence contexts. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. _____ ihr dieses Jahr wieder in Deutschland?
(sein)
(Were you in Germany again this year?)
2. Herr Meyer _____ gestern kein Glück. (haben)
(Mr. Meyer had no luck yesterday.)
3. Karl _____ Lehrer und liebte seinen Beruf.
(werden)
(Karl became a teacher and loved his profession.)
4. Du _____ aber schnell fertig! (sein)
(You got ready in a hurry!)
5. Wir _____ den ganzen Nachmittag am Strand.
(sein)
(We were at the beach all afternoon.)
6. _____ ihr genug Geld fürs Kino? (haben)
(Did you have enough money for the movies?)
7. Marlene Dietrich _____ eine berühmte
Schauspielerin. (werden)
(Marlene Dietrich became a famous actress.)
8. Herr Müller _____ immer guten Wein im Haus.
(haben)
(Mr. Müller always had good wine in the house.)

9. Sie _____ wieder gesund. (werden)
(They became well again.)
10. Ich _____ wenig Zeit. (haben)
(I had little time.)
11. Wo _____ Frau Müller gestern abend? (sein)
(Where was Mrs. Müller last night?)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. Wart

_____ 2. hatte

_____ 3. wurde

_____ 4. warst

_____ 5. waren

_____ 6. Hattet

_____ 7. wurde

_____ 8. hatte

_____ 9. wurden

_____ 10. hatte

_____ 11. war

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate imperfect tense form of the verbs in parentheses.

NOTES

1. Du immer ein guter Schüler. (sein)
(You always were a good student.)
2. Professor Schulz gestern Geburtstag. (haben)
(Yesterday was Professor Schulz' birthday.)
3. Karl Soldat, und man schickte ihn nach
Deutschland. (werden)
(Karl became a soldier and was sent to Germany.)
4. Sie gestern in der Stadt? (sein)
(Were you downtown yesterday?)
5. Wir gestern abend Gäste. (haben)
(We had company last night.)
6. Sie lange bei uns. (sein)
(They were at our house a long time.)
7. Peter und Max Freunde. (werden)
(Peter and Max became friends.)
8. ihr gestern schlechtes Wetter? (haben)
(Did you have bad weather yesterday?)
9. Nach dem Regen es wieder schön. (werden)
(After the rain it became nice again.)
10. Damals ich noch in München. (sein)
(At that time, I was still in Munich.)

Section 2

Imperfect Tense of Strong Verbs

From **Lessons 22** and 21 (Present Perfect Tense I and II) you are familiar with the terminology of "regular" ("weak") and "irregular" ("strong") verbs. "Weak" verbs are characterized by the fact that the infinitive stem of the verb serves as the base from which both the past participle (needed for the present perfect tense) and the imperfect tense forms are derived.

"Strong" verbs, on the other hand, have imperfect tense stems (and usually, past participle stems) which are different from the infinitive stem and cannot be predicted from the form of the infinitive itself. For example, consider the strong verb sprechen. The infinitive stem of sprechen is sprech-, but the stem from which the imperfect tense forms are derived is NOT sprech-, but sprach-. (The past participle of this verb shows yet another change ["gesprochen"]).

Another example for a stem vowel change to a is the strong verb finden. The infinitive stem is find-. What is the imperfect stem?

The imperfect stem is fand-. This fact CANNOT be deduced from the infinitive. Thus, for all strong verbs, it will be necessary for you to memorize the imperfect stem, just as it was necessary for you to memorize the past participle in working with the present perfect tense.

The strong verbs listed below will be used in this **Lesson**. The past participle of each verb is shown in parentheses, and the verbs are grouped according to the so-called ablaut series which is based on the sound (vowel) differences which occur between the infinitive and the imperfect stem. Within a given group, you should be able to note certain similarities in the way the imperfect stem is formed (i.e. the vowel changes which take place), but this will not substitute for outright memorization of each of the imperfect stems.

For each of the verbs below, repeat both the infinitive form and the imperfect stem after the model voice. For example:

You see and hear: finden fand (gefunden)

You say: finden fand

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Imperfect Stem</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
bleiben (stay, remain)	blieb	(geblieben)
schneiden (cut)	schnitt ¹	(geschnitten)
fliegen (fly)	flog	(geflogen)
anziehen (put on, dress)	zog an	(angezogen)

(¹note the alternation to t)

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Imperfect Stem</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>	<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Imperfect Stem</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
beginnen (begin, start)	begann	(begonnen)	fahren (drive, go)	fuhr	(gefahren)
finden (find)	fand	(gefunden)	stehen (stand, be parked)	stand	(gestanden)
singen (sing)	sang	(gesungen)	tragen (carry, bear, wear)	trug	(getragen)
trinken (drink)	trank	(getrunken)	gefallen (please, like)	gefiel	(gefallen)
helfen (help)	half	(geholfen)	heissen (be called)	hiess	(geheissen)
kommen (come)	kam	(gekommen)	laufen (run, walk)	lief	(gelaufen)
nehmen (take)	nahm	(genommen)	rufen (call)	rief	(gerufen)
mitnehmen (take along)	nahm mit	(mitgenommen)	gehen (go)	ging	(gegangen)
sprechen (speak, talk)	sprach	(gesprochen)	schlafen (sleep)	schlief	(geschlafen)
essen (eat)	ass	(gegessen)	<p>At this point, you should rewind your tape and repeat the preceding exercise at least once, until you are quite confident of the spelling and correct pronunciation of each imperfect stem. Then continue with the exercises which follow.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">START THE TAPE.</p>		
geben (give)	gab	(gegeben)			
lesen (read)	las	(gelesen)			
liegen (lie, recline)	lag	(gelegen)			
sitzen (sit)	sass	(gesessen)			

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect stem of the verbs given below.

1. bleiben _____
2. schneiden _____
3. fliegen _____
4. anziehen _____
5. beginnen _____
6. finden _____
7. singen _____
8. trinken _____
9. helfen _____
10. kommen _____
11. nehmen _____
12. mitnehmen _____
13. sprechen _____
14. essen _____
15. geben _____
16. lesen _____
17. liegen _____
18. sitzen _____

19. fahren _____
20. stehen _____
21. tragen _____
22. gefallen _____
23. heissen _____
24. laufen _____
25. gehen _____
26. rufen _____
27. schlafen _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.
NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. blieb
- _____ 2. schnitt
- _____ 3. flog
- _____ 4. zog an
- _____ 5. begann
- _____ 6. fand
- _____ 7. sang
- _____ 8. trank
- _____ 9. half
- _____ 10. kam
- _____ 11. nahm
- _____ 12. nahm mit
- _____ 13. sprach

- _____ 14. ass
- _____ 15. gab
- _____ 16. las
- _____ 17. lag
- _____ 18. sass
- _____ 19. fuhr
- _____ 20. stand
- _____ 21. trug
- _____ 22. gefiel
- _____ 23. hiess
- _____ 24. lief
- _____ 25. ging
- _____ 26. rief
- _____ 27. schlief

START THE TAPE.

Say the appropriate imperfect stem of the verbs given below.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. gehen | 14. trinken |
| 2. liegen | 15. stehen |
| 3. laufen | 16. anziehen |
| 4. tragen | 17. beginnen |
| 5. schlafen | 18. bleiben |
| 6. singen | 19. sprechen |
| 7. essen | 20. fahren |
| 8. helfen | 21. nehmen |
| 9. geben | 22. sitzen |
| 10. schneiden | 23. gefallen |
| 11. fliegen | 24. mitnehmen |
| 12. heissen | 25. kommen |
| 13. rufen | 26. finden |
| | 27. lesen |

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect stem of the verbs given below.

- | | |
|-------------|-------|
| 1. fliegen | _____ |
| 2. singen | _____ |
| 3. stehen | _____ |
| 4. schlafen | _____ |
| 5. liegen | _____ |
| 6. geben | _____ |

- | | |
|---------------|-------|
| 7. helfen | _____ |
| 8. schneiden | _____ |
| 9. beginnen | _____ |
| 10. gehen | _____ |
| 11. laufen | _____ |
| 12. essen | _____ |
| 13. bleiben | _____ |
| 14. anziehen | _____ |
| 15. tragen | _____ |
| 16. trinken | _____ |
| 17. mitnehmen | _____ |
| 18. sprechen | _____ |
| 19. finden | _____ |
| 20. lesen | _____ |
| 21. fahren | _____ |
| 22. rufen | _____ |
| 23. gefallen | _____ |
| 24. sitzen | _____ |
| 25. kommen | _____ |
| 26. nehmen | _____ |

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. flog
- _____ 2. sang
- _____ 3. stand
- _____ 4. schlief
- _____ 5. lag
- _____ 6. gab
- _____ 7. half
- _____ 8. schnitt
- _____ 9. begann
- _____ 10. ging
- _____ 11. lief
- _____ 12. ass
- _____ 13. blieb
- _____ 14. zog an

- _____ 15. trug
- _____ 16. trank
- _____ 17. nahm mit
- _____ 18. sprach
- _____ 19. fand
- _____ 20. las
- _____ 21. fuhr
- _____ 22. rief
- _____ 23. gefiel
- _____ 24. sass
- _____ 25. kam
- _____ 26. nahm

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect stem of the verbs given below.

1. trinken

2. fliegen

3. tragen

4. heissen

5. lesen

6. singen

7. schneiden

8. sprechen

9. sitzen

10. laufen

11. stehen

12. gehen

13. gefallen

14. liegen

15. rufen

16. bleiben

17. anziehen

18. nehmen

19. finden

20. kommen

21. schlafen

22. fahren

23. geben

24. mitnehmen

25. essen

26. beginnen

27. helfen

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. trank
- _____ 2. flog
- _____ 3. trug
- _____ 4. hiess
- _____ 5. las
- _____ 6. sang
- _____ 7. schnitt
- _____ 8. sprach
- _____ 9. sass
- _____ 10. lief
- _____ 11. stand
- _____ 12. ging
- _____ 13. gefiel
- _____ 14. lag

- _____ 15. rief
- _____ 16. blieb
- _____ 17. zog an
- _____ 18. nahm
- _____ 19. fand
- _____ 20. kam
- _____ 21. schlief
- _____ 22. fuhr
- _____ 23. gab
- _____ 24. nahm mit
- _____ 25. ass
- _____ 26. begann
- _____ 27. half

START THE TAPE.

You should now have a thorough knowledge of the imperfect stem of each of the strong verbs used in the lesson. To these, the appropriate strong endings must be added. You will remember that the verb sein in the preceding section uses these strong endings, and the same endings are seen in the strong verb sprechen, below. Listen and repeat, noticing especially the endings used. In the ich and er forms there is a "zero" ending, which means simply that the imperfect stem itself serves as the entire verb form.

ich sprach	wir sprachen
du sprach <u>t</u>	ihr sprach <u>t</u>
er [sie, es] sprach	sie sprachen
	Sie sprachen

Although the above pattern of endings is the most common pattern with strong verbs, there are certain slight variations with some verbs, depending on the endings of the imperfect stems themselves. Strong verbs whose imperfect stem ends in -d or -t insert an -e- between stem and ending in the du and ihr forms. Listen and repeat:

ich fand	wir fanden
du fand <u>est</u>	ihr fand <u>et</u>
er [sie, es] fand	sie fanden
	Sie fanden

Strong verbs whose imperfect stem ends in an "s" sound also insert an -e-, but only in the du form. Listen and repeat:

ich las	wir lasen
du las <u>est</u>	ihr last
er [sie, es] las	sie lasen
	Sie lasen

Study these three example verbs until you are confident of the endings and the principles underlying them, then turn the page for exercises.

START THE TAPE.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense forms of sprechen.

ich _____	wir _____
du _____	ihr _____
er [sie, es] _____	sie _____
	Sie _____

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense forms of finden.

ich _____	wir _____
du _____	ihr _____
er [sie, es] _____	sie _____
	Sie _____

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense forms of lesen.

ich _____	wir _____
du _____	ihr _____
er [sie, es] _____	sie _____
	Sie _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ sprach	_____ sprachen
_____ sprachst	_____ sprach
_____ sprach	_____ sprachen
	_____ sprachen

_____ fand	_____ fanden
_____ fandest	_____ fandet
_____ fand	_____ fanden
	_____ fanden

_____ las	_____ lasen
_____ lasest	_____ last
_____ las	_____ lasen
	_____ lasen

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense forms of the verbs in parentheses.

1. (bleiben) er _____
2. (schneiden) ihr _____
3. (fliegen) sie [pl.] _____
4. (anziehen) ihr _____
5. (beginnen) du _____
6. (finden) ich _____
7. (singen) wir _____
8. (trinken) ihr _____
9. (helfen) sie [sing.] _____
10. (kommen) ich _____
11. (nehmen) du _____
12. (mitnehmen) sie [pl.] _____
13. (sprechen) ihr _____
14. (essen) Sie _____

15. (geben) es _____
16. (lesen) du _____
17. (liegen) wir _____
18. (sitzen) ihr _____
19. (gehen) sie [pl.] _____
20. (fahren) er _____
21. (stehen) ich _____
22. (tragen) sie [sing.] _____
23. (gefallen) es _____
24. (heissen) du _____
25. (laufen) Sie _____
26. (rufen) ihr _____
27. (schlafen) wir _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. blieb
- _____ 2. schnittet
- _____ 3. flogen
- _____ 4. zogt an
- _____ 5. begannst
- _____ 6. fand
- _____ 7. sangen
- _____ 8. trankt
- _____ 9. half
- _____ 10. kam
- _____ 11. nahmst
- _____ 12. nahmen mit
- _____ 13. sprach
- _____ 14. assen

- _____ 15. gab
- _____ 16. lasest
- _____ 17. lagen
- _____ 18. sasst
- _____ 19. gingen
- _____ 20. fuhr
- _____ 21. stand
- _____ 22. trug
- _____ 23. gefiel
- _____ 24. hiessest
- _____ 25. liefen
- _____ 26. rief
- _____ 27. schliefen

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect forms of the verbs in parentheses.

1. (fahren) du _____
2. (singen) ihr _____
3. (finden) du _____
4. (lesen) du _____
5. (sitzen) du _____
6. (rufen) ihr _____
7. (fahren) ihr _____
8. (gehen) du _____
9. (finden) ihr _____
10. (singen) du _____
11. (sitzen) ihr _____
12. (lesen) ihr _____
13. (rufen) du _____
14. (gehen) ihr _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say the imperfect tense forms of the verbs in parentheses.

1. (bleiben) ihr
2. (schneiden) du

3. (fliegen) er
4. (anziehen) sie [sing.]
5. (beginnen) ich
6. (finden) es
7. (singen) du
8. (trinken) wir
9. (helfen) Sie
10. (kommen) sie [pl.]
11. (nehmen) er
12. (mitnehmen) ich
13. (sprechen) du
14. (essen) ihr
15. (geben) wir
16. (lesen) ihr
17. (liegen) es
18. (sitzen) du
19. (gehen) sie [pl.]
20. (fahren) wir
21. (stehen) du
22. (tragen) ich
23. (gefallen) sie [pl.]
24. (heissen) ihr
25. (laufen) er
26. (rufen) du
27. (schlafen) ich

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. fuhrst
- _____ 2. sangt
- _____ 3. fandest
- _____ 4. lasest
- _____ 5. sassest
- _____ 6. rieht
- _____ 7. fuhrst
- _____ 8. gingst
- _____ 9. fandet
- _____ 10. sangst
- _____ 11. sasst
- _____ 12. last
- _____ 13. riefst
- _____ 14. gingt

The following two exercises practice the use of the imperfect tense of strong verbs in full-sentence contexts, and will serve as a summary of this section.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense form of the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. Die Schüler _____ ihrem Lehrer. (helfen)
(The students helped their professor.)
2. Der Film _____ ihnen nicht. (gefallen)
(They didn't like the movie.)
3. Wenn Herr Müller Freunde besuchte, _____ er immer seinen Hund _____. (mitnehmen)
(Whenever Mr. Müller visited friends he always took his dog along.)
4. Warum _____ du gestern abend zu Hause? (bleiben)
(Why did you stay home last night?)
5. Inge _____ die Adresse nicht. (finden)
(Inge didn't find the address.)
6. Damals _____ ich kein Bier. (trinken)
(At that time I didn't drink beer.)
7. _____ ihr gestern mit Professor Schulz? (sprechen)
(Did you talk with Professor Schulz yesterday?)
8. Im Winter _____ wir immer warme Mäntel. (tragen)
(In winter we always wore warm coats.)
9. Als ich jung war, _____ ich jeden Abend durch den Park. (laufen)
(When I was young I used to run through the park every evening.)
10. Jedes Wochenende _____ Hans zu seinen Eltern. (fahren)
(Every weekend, Hans drove to his parents'.)
11. Wie lange _____ ihr gestern abend in der Wirtschaft? (sitzen)
(How long did you sit in the tavern last night?)
12. Der Leutnant _____ den Soldaten in sein Büro. (rufen)
(The lieutenant called the soldier into his office.)
13. Du _____ früher besser! (singen)
(You used to sing better!)
14. Wie heisst der Herr, neben dem Sie _____? (sitzen)
(What's the name of the gentleman you sat next to?)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. halfen

8. trugen

2. gefiel

9. lief

3. nahm mit

10. fuhr

4. bliebst

11. sasst

5. fand

12. rief

6. trank

13. sangst

7. Spracht

14. sassen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate imperfect form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Wenn er in Köln war, er immer im Hotel Rheingold. (essen)
(Whenever he was in Cologne he always ate at the Rheingold Hotel.)
2. Die Mutter dem Kind die Haare. (schneiden)
(The mother cut the child's hair.)
3. Das Fussballspiel pünktlich. (beginnen)
(The soccer game did start on time.)
4. Wir immer mit der Lufthansa nach Deutschland. (fliegen)
(We always flew with Lufthansa to Germany.)
5. Am Wochenende sie immer etwas länger. (schlafen)
(On weekends they used to sleep somewhat longer.)
6. Wie der Herr? (heissen)
(What was the gentleman's name?)
7. Wann ihr gestern abend nach Hause? (gehen)
(When [at what time] did you go home last night?)
8. Der Schüler immer zu spät zum Unterricht. (kommen)
(The student always came late to class.)
9. Da es kalt war, Inge ihren Wintermantel (anziehen)
(Because it was cold, Inge put on her winter coat.)
10. du mir das Buch gestern oder vorgestern? (geben)
(Did you give me the book yesterday or the day before yesterday?)
11. Sie immer gute Bücher. (lesen)
(They always read good books.)
12. Im Sommer sie gern in der Sonne. (liegen)
(In summer they liked to sunbathe.)
13. Wo du ihn? (finden)
(Where did you find him?)
14. Er sein ganzes Geld und fuhr in Urlaub. (nehmen)
(He took all his money and went on vacation.)

Section 3

Imperfect Tense of Mixed Verbs

In addition to the "weak" and "strong" verbs, there is a group of verbs which are usually referred to as "mixed." The "mixed" verbs are characterized by the fact that their imperfect stems show vowel changes typical of strong verbs, while the imperfect endings which they use are identical with those of the weak verbs.

The verb bringen is a typical "mixed" verb. Its imperfect stem is brach-, to which the endings -te, -test, -te, etc. are added, as shown in the table below. Listen and repeat:

ich <u>brachte</u>	wir <u>brachten</u>
du <u>brachtest</u>	ihr <u>brachtet</u>
er [sie, es] <u>brachte</u>	sie <u>brachten</u>
	Sie <u>brachten</u>

The mixed verbs form a very small group, of which the five shown below are the most frequently used. Just as with strong verbs, you will have to memorize the change which takes place in the imperfect stem. You will also have to remember that these five verbs take weak rather than strong endings. Listen to and repeat both the infinitive form and the imperfect stem.

bringen	brach-	(gebracht)
(bring)		
mitbringen	brach- mit	(mitgebracht)
(bring along)		

denken	dach-	(gedacht)
(think)		
kennen	kann-	(gekant)
(know [a person]; be familiar with something)		
wissen	wuss-	(gewusst)
(know [a fact])		

Study the above forms, then turn the page for exercises.
START THE TAPE.

Fill in the blanks with the imperfect stem of the mixed verbs shown below.

1. bringen _____
2. mitbringen _____
3. denken _____
4. kennen _____
5. wissen _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect form of the mixed verb kennen. Remember to use the weak verb endings.

1. ich _____
2. du _____
3. er [sie, es] _____
4. wir _____
5. ihr _____
6. sie _____
7. Sie _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Write the infinitive and imperfect stem for each of the five mixed verbs used in this section. (Any order is acceptable.)

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Imperfect Stem</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense forms of the mixed verbs shown in parentheses.

1. (bringen) ich _____
2. (denken) ihr _____
3. (wissen) Sie _____
4. (mitbringen) es _____
5. (kennen) er _____
6. (denken) wir _____
7. (wissen) ich _____
8. (mitbringen) sie [pl.] _____
9. (kennen) du _____
10. (bringen) wir _____
11. (kennen) ihr _____
12. (bringen) Sie _____
13. (wissen) er _____
14. (mitbringen) du _____
15. (denken) [sie sing.] _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. brach-
- _____ 2. brach- mit
- _____ 3. dach-
- _____ 4. kann-
- _____ 5. wuss-

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. kannte
- _____ 2. kanntest
- _____ 3. kannte
- _____ 4. kannten
- _____ 5. kanntet
- _____ 6. kannten
- _____ 7. kannten

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.
(Your answers may be in different order.)

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Imperfect Stem</u>
bringen	brach-
mitbringen	brach- mit

denken	dach-
kennen	kann-
wissen	wuss-

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. brachte
- _____ 2. dachtet
- _____ 3. wussten
- _____ 4. brachte mit
- _____ 5. kannte
- _____ 6. dachten
- _____ 7. wusste
- _____ 8. brachten mit
- _____ 9. kanntest
- _____ 10. brachten
- _____ 11. kanntet
- _____ 12. brachten
- _____ 13. wusste
- _____ 14. brachtest mit
- _____ 15. dachte

START THE TAPE.

Say the appropriate imperfect tense forms of the mixed verbs shown in parentheses.

1. (wissen) sie [pl.]
2. (bringen) er
3. (denken) wir
4. (mitbringen) ich
5. (kennen) Sie
6. (bringen) sie [sing.]
7. (denken) er
8. (wissen) du
9. (mitbringen) ihr
10. (kennen) ich
11. (wissen) wir
12. (mitbringen) er
13. (kennen) es
14. (bringen) ihr
15. (denken) Sie

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense forms of the mixed verbs shown in parentheses.

1. An wen _____ du gerade? (denken)
(Whom were you thinking of just now?)

2. _____ ihr, dass Karl morgen kommt? (wissen)
(Did you know that Karl is coming tomorrow?)
3. Inge _____ ihren Freund _____.
(mitbringen)
(Inge brought her friend along.)
4. Wir _____ unsere Nachbarn nicht. (kennen)
(We didn't know our neighbors.)
5. Am Wochenende _____ Herr Müller seiner Frau
immer Blumen. (bringen)
(On weekends Mr. Müller always brought his wife
flowers.)
6. _____ du den Herrn, der aus dem Restaurant
kam? (kennen)
(Did you know the gentleman who came out of the
restaurant?)
7. Wenn Maria uns besuchte, _____ sie ihre
Kinder _____. (mitbringen)
(Whenever Maria visited us, she brought her
children along.)
8. Hans und Inge _____ oft an ihren letzten
Urlaub. (denken)
(Hans and Inge often thought about their last
vacation.)
9. _____ du deine Freundin zum Bahnhof?
(bringen)
(Did you take your girl friend to the train
station?)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. dachtest

_____ 2. Wusstet

_____ 3. brachte mit

_____ 4. kannten

_____ 5. brachte

_____ 6. Kanntest

_____ 7. brachte mit

_____ 8. dachten

_____ 9. Brachtest

_____ 10. wusste

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate imperfect form of the mixed verbs shown in parentheses.

1. Davon er nichts. (wissen)
(He didn't know anything about that.)
2. Wir....ihm öfter Zeitschriften
(mitbringen)
(We often brought along magazines for him.)
3. Wir oft an unsere Freunde in Deutschland.
(denken)
(We often thought of our friends in Germany.)
4. Du Professor Schulz besser als ich. (kennen)
(You knew Professor Schulz better than I.)
5. Niemand, wo Hans wohnte. (wissen)
(Nobody knew where Hans was living.)
6. Der Soldat den Offizier zum Kasino. (bringen)
(The soldier brought the officer to the officer's club.)
7. Wir Herrn Müller gut. (kennen)
(We knew Mr. Müller well.)
8. Als Frau Meyer krank war, wir ihr etwas zu essen. (bringen)
(When Mrs. Meyer was sick, we brought her something to eat.)

9. Grossmutter uns immer schöne Geschenke....., wenn sie uns besuchte. (mitbringen)
(Grandmother always brought us beautiful presents when she visited us.)
10. Gestern ich nicht daran. (denken)
(I didn't think of it yesterday.)

NOTES

Genitive Case

In addition to the nominative, dative, and accusative cases which you learned in previous modules, there is a fourth case in German known as the genitive. A major use of the genitive case is to indicate possession, that is to say, to express concepts such as "my friend's house," "the taste of the apple," "Peter's book," and so forth. However, possession is not the only area in which the genitive case is used. For example, certain prepositions are always followed by the genitive case, even though no idea of possession is involved. We will first study the use of the genitive case to indicate possession, and then consider the use of the genitive with prepositions.

The module is divided into the following sections:

1. Genitive Case Forms of Common Nouns, Der- and Ein- Words
2. Genitive Case of the Interrogative and Relative Pronouns
3. Genitive Case After Certain Prepositions
4. Genitive Case Forms of Proper Nouns

Genitive Case Forms ofCommon Nouns, "Der-" and "Ein-" Words

There are two ways to express the concept of "possession" in English: either by using a possessive construction with the apostrophe ("the picture's colors," "my friend's house"); or by using a prepositional phrase ("the colors of the picture," "the house of my friend"). In German, except when proper nouns are involved (Hans, Herr Müller, Vater, Mutter, Professor Schulz, etc.), the word order used in possessive constructions corresponds to the second English pattern. Thus, an English phrase such as "the picture's colors" would be rendered in German as:

die Farben des Bildes

which presents a sequence of words similar to the English phrase:

"the colors of the picture"

When learning to use the German genitive case to express possession, you should make it a practice to think in terms of the full English prepositional phrase:

not "the picture's colors"

but "the colors of the picture"

not "my friend's book"

but "the book of my friend"

not "the lady's house"

but "the house of the lady" and so forth.

The underlined phrases in the above sentences (and in similar sentences) would all be rendered by the German genitive construction:

die Farben des Bildes

das Buch meines Freundes

das Haus der Dame

You may have noticed that in the genitive constructions above, several of the nouns had certain genitive endings, in addition to the genitive endings shown by the definite article or other der- or ein- words preceding them. Nouns in the genitive case do not have an ending if they are in the plural. In the singular, they do not have an ending if they are feminine. Alternatively stated, masculine and neuter singular nouns show a special ending in the genitive case. The form of this ending depends on whether the noun has one syllable or more than one syllable. One-syllable nouns add -es, and nouns of more than one syllable add only s.¹

Study the above paragraphs until you are sure that you know the proper endings for nouns in the genitive case and the gender/number situations in which they are used.

START THE TAPE.

¹There are some slight exceptions to this rule which will not be discussed in this lesson.

In each of the boxes below, write the proper ending for nouns in the genitive case. If no ending is required, write "0".

Singular

One syllable More than one syllable

Masculine:

Feminine:

Neuter:

Plural

Masculine:

Feminine:

Neuter:

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

The correct answers are:

Singular

One syllable More than one syllable

Masculine:	<input type="text" value="es"/>	<input type="text" value="s"/>
Feminine:	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Neuter:	<input type="text" value="es"/>	<input type="text" value="s"/>

Plural

Masculine:	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Feminine:	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Neuter:	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>

START THE TAPE.

The noun-ending rule you have just learned does not apply in the case of the so-called "n-nouns" (Soldat, Schütze, Herr, Nachbar, Bauer, etc.). These nouns (which are all masculine) add -n (or -en) in the genitive singular. For example:

das Buch des Schützen
(the book of the private)

Fill in the proper genitive case ending for each of the nouns below. For example:

You see: der Preis des Buch_____
(the price of the book)

You write: der Preis des Buches

Where no ending is required, leave the ending blank. Remember the special rule for "n-" nouns.

1. das Bild des Mädchen_____
(the picture of the girl)
2. die Freundinnen der Schüler _____
(the girl friends of the students)
3. die Adresse der Frau _____
(the address of the woman)
4. die Briefe des Soldat_____
(the letters of the soldier)
5. der Hund des Offizier_____
(the dog of the officer)

6. der Besuch der Freunde _____
(the visit of the friends)
7. die Arbeit des Kellner _____
(the job of the waiter)
8. der Bruder des Kind _____
(the brother of the child)
9. der Bleistift der Schülerin _____
(the pencil of the student)
10. die Eltern der Mädchen _____
(the parents of the girls)
11. die Preise der Restaurants _____
(the prices of the restaurants)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Fill in the appropriate genitive case noun ending as in the previous exercise. If no ending is required, leave blank. Note that the English translation makes use of possessive constructions with the apostrophe, wherever they are stylistically called for.

1. das Dach der Kirche _____
(the roof of the church)

2. die Arbeit der Frauen _____
(the women's work)
3. die Pflanzen des Wald _____
(the plants of the forest)
4. die Einladung der Dame _____
(the lady's invitation)
5. die Koffer der Soldaten _____
(the soldiers' suitcases)
6. die Bücher der Schüler _____
(the students' books)
7. das Büro des Lehrer _____
(the teacher's office)
8. der Preis des Kleid _____
(the price of the dress)
9. die Plätze des Kino _____
(the seats of the movie theater)
10. die Geschenke der Kinder _____
(the children's presents)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. Mädchens
- _____ 2. Schüler
- _____ 3. Frau
- _____ 4. Soldaten
- _____ 5. Offiziers
- _____ 6. Freunde
- _____ 7. Kellners
- _____ 8. Kindes
- _____ 9. Schülerin
- _____ 10. Mädchen
- _____ 11. Restaurants

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. Kirche
- _____ 2. Frauen
- _____ 3. Waldes
- _____ 4. Dame
- _____ 5. Soldaten
- _____ 6. Schüler
- _____ 7. Lehrers
- _____ 8. Kleides
- _____ 9. Kinos
- _____ 10. Kinder

START THE TAPE.

The next step is to learn the genitive endings for the definite article and other "der" or "kein" words when they are used with nouns in the genitive case. Fortunately, all the "der" words (except for the relative and interrogative pronouns and certain other exceptions) and the "kein" words have the same endings in the genitive case, so only one set of forms needs to be learned for the definite article der, the indefinite article ein, the word kein, the possessive adjectives (mein, dein, sein, etc.) and the indefinite pronouns jeder, welcher, etc. The following table shows these genitive endings applied to der. The noun endings are also underlined. Listen and repeat:

Singular

Masculine: das Buch des Mannes

Feminine: das Buch der Frau

Neuter: das Buch des Kindes

Plural

All Genders: die Bücher der Männer

From the above, you can note that the genitive case endings used with "der" and "kein" words are similar to the single-syllable noun endings in the genitive case, except that wherever no ending is used for the noun (i.e., in all genders of the plural and in the feminine singular), the "der" or "kein" word has an -er ending.

Study the above table of genitive endings for the "der" (and "kein") words until you are confident of these forms, then turn the page for exercises.

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate genitive case form of the definite article and noun shown in parentheses. For example:

You see: das Auto _____ (der Mann)

You write: das Auto des Mannes

("the car of the man," or "the man's car")

Remember that different noun endings are required depending on whether the noun has one or more than one syllable. Keep in mind also the exception with "n-" nouns.

1. die Wohnung _____ (der Offizier)
(the apartment of the officer)
2. die Türen _____ (das Haus)
(the doors of the house)
3. das Fahrrad _____ (der Schütze)
(the private's bicycle)
4. die Schaufenster _____ (die Kaufhäuser)
(The shop windows of the department stores)
5. die Kleider _____ (die Damen)
(the ladies' dresses)
6. die Kirchen _____ (die Stadt)
(the churches of the town)
7. die Autos _____ (die Soldaten)
(the soldiers' cars)

8. der Garten _____ (der Nachbar)
(the neighbor's garden)
9. Der Mantel _____ (das Mädchen)
(the girl's coat)
10. die Reise _____ (die Mutter)
(the mother's trip)
11. die Schüler _____ (der Lehrer)
(the teacher's students)
12. die Tage _____ (die Woche)
(the days of the week)
13. der Ball _____ (das Kind)
(the child's ball)
14. der Brief _____ (der Freund)
(the friend's letter)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate genitive case form of the definite article and the nouns shown in parentheses.

1. die Einwohner _____ (die Stadt)
(the inhabitants of the city)
2. die Bücher _____ (die Schüler)
(the students' books)
3. die Frau _____ (der Mann)
(the wife of the man)
4. die Zimmer _____ (die Wohnung)
(the rooms of the apartment)
5. die Adressen _____ (die Freunde)
(the addresses of the friends)
6. das Haus _____ (die Grossmutter)
(the grandmother's house)
7. der Preis _____ (das Buch)
(the price of the book)
8. die Männer _____ (die Frauen)
(the women's husbands)
9. die Kühe _____ (der Bauer)
(the farmer's cows)
10. der Koffer _____ (der Herr)
(the gentleman's suitcase)

11. die Gäste _____ (das Hotel)
(the guests of the hotel)
12. die Namen _____ (die Länder)
(the names of the countries)
13. die Uhr _____ (der Soldat)
(the soldier's watch)
14. das Wörterbuch _____ (die Schüler)
(the students' dictionary)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. des Offiziers

_____ 2. des Hauses

_____ 3. des Schützen

_____ 4. der Kaufhäuser

_____ 5. der Damen

_____ 6. der Stadt

_____ 7. der Soldaten

_____ 8. des Nachbarn

_____ 9. des Mädchens

_____ 10. der Mutter

_____ 11. des Lehrers

_____ 12. der Woche

_____ 13. des Kindes

_____ 14. des Freundes

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. der Stadt
- _____ 2. der Schüler
- _____ 3. des Mannes
- _____ 4. der Wohnung
- _____ 5. der Freunde
- _____ 6. der Grossmutter
- _____ 7. des Buches
- _____ 8. der Frauen
- _____ 9. des Bauern
- _____ 10. des Herrn

- _____ 11. des Hotels
- _____ 12. der Länder
- _____ 13. des Soldaten
- _____ 14. der Schüler

NOTES

Say the phrases below, supplying the appropriate genitive form of the definite article and the noun shown in parentheses.

1. das Beispiel (der Lehrer)
(the teacher's example)
2. die Mutter (die Kinder)
(the children's mother)
3. die Frage (die Schülerin)
(the student's question)
4. die Ideen (die Männer)
(the men's ideas)
5. der Preis (das Hotelzimmer)
(the price of the hotel room)
6. die Fenster (die Kirchen)
(the windows of the churches)
7. der Hund (der Nachbar)
(the neighbor's dog)
8. der Keller (das Haus)
(the basement of the house)
9. die Autos (die Offiziere)
(the officers' cars)
10. das Zimmer (der Kamerad)
(the buddy's room)
11. der Hut (die Dame)
(the lady's hat)
12. die Fragen (die Mädchen)
(the girls' questions)
13. das Buch (die Lehrerin)
(the teacher's book)
14. das Wasser (der Fluss)
(the water of the river)
15. die Farbe (das Kleid)
(the color of the dress)
16. der Kellner (das Restaurant)
(the waiter of the restaurant)
17. die Bücher (die Schülerinnen)
(the students' books)

As explained earlier in this section, the genitive case endings for "kein" words (including the possessive adjectives) are the same as those for the "der" words. Listen to and repeat the phrases below, which show the genitive case forms of the possessive adjective mein:

Singular

Masculine: das Auto meines Freundes

Feminine: das Haus meiner Mutter

Neuter: der Ball meines Kindes

Plural

All genders: der Name meiner Eltern

The same endings apply to the other possessive adjectives (dein, sein, unser, etc.), to the indefinite article ein (which has no plural, however) and to the word kein.

What would be the German equivalent for:

"a child's ball"

(literally, "the ball of a child")?

It would be:

der Ball eines Kindes.

In the exercises which follow, the genitive case forms of ein, kein, and the possessive adjectives will be practiced. You should remember that the possessive adjective euere drops the -e- before the -r when an ending is added. Thus, "the roof of your house" would be:

das Dach eures Hauses.

The possessive adjective unser often follows the same pattern as euere, i.e. the -e- before the -r is dropped in the genitive case, especially in speaking. Thus, a speaker might say:

das Dach unsres Hauses.

Note: The -er at the end of unser and euere is part of the stem. It is NOT an ending.

Listen to and repeat the following German phrases, noticing the underlined endings and the English translations.

1. das Buch unserer Lehrerin
(our teacher's book)
2. das Fahrrad ihres Bruders
(her brother's bicycle)
3. die Türen unseres Hauses
(the doors of our house)
4. das Buch meines Lehrers
(my teacher's book)
5. das Auto eines Soldaten
(a soldier's car)
6. die Gärten eurer Nachbarn
(your neighbors' gardens)
7. die Adressen seiner Kameraden
(his buddies' addresses)

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate genitive case form of the "kein" word and the noun shown in parentheses.

1. das Haus _____ (meine Mutter)
(my mother's house)
2. der Garten _____ (unser Nachbar)
(our neighbor's garden)
3. das Leben _____ (ein Soldat)
(a soldier's life)
4. der Sohn _____ (mein Lehrer)
(my teacher's son)
5. die Mutter _____ (ihre Freundin)
(her friend's mother)
6. die Kirchen _____ (eine Stadt)
(a town's churches)
7. der Preis _____ (ein Auto)
(the price of a car)
8. der Sohn _____ (sein Freund)
(his friend's son)
9. die Ideen _____ (ein Mann)
(a man's ideas)
10. das Auto _____ (Ihre Mutter)
(your mother's car)

11. das Spielzeug _____ (eure Kinder)
(your children's toys)
12. das Haus _____ (unser Lehrer)
(our teacher's house)
13. die Lehrerin _____ (dein Kind)
(your child's teacher)
14. die Farbe _____ (ihr Kleid)
(the color of her dress)
15. die Fahrräder _____ (ihre Töchter)
(their daughters' bicycles)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German

- _____ 1. meiner Mutter
- _____ 2. unseres Nachbarn
- _____ 3. eines Soldaten
- _____ 4. meines Lehrers
- _____ 5. ihrer Freundin
- _____ 6. einer Stadt
- _____ 7. eines Autos
- _____ 8. seines Freundes
- _____ 9. eines Mannes
- _____ 10. Ihrer Mutter

- _____ 11. eurer Kinder
- _____ 12. unseres Lehrers
- _____ 13. deines Kindes
- _____ 14. ihres Kleides
- _____ 15. ihrer Töchter

START THE TAPE.

Say the phrases below, supplying the appropriate genitive case form of the "kein" word and the noun shown in parentheses.

1. die Freundin (seine Schwester)
(his sister's girl friend)
2. der Besuch (unsere Kinder)
(our children's visit)
3. der Urlaub (ein Soldat)
(a soldier's vacation)
4. die Farbe (ein Auto)
(a car's color)

5. das Haus (ihr Arzt)
(her doctor's house)
6. die Reisen (seine Eltern)
(his parents' trips)
7. die Einwohner (eure Stadt)
(the inhabitants of your town)
8. der Freund (deine Tochter)
(your daughter's friend)
9. das Beispiel (euer Lehrer)
(your teacher's example)
10. das Arbeitszimmer (Ihr Vater)
(your father's study)
11. das Bild (meine Grosseltern)
(my grandparents' picture)
12. die Arbeit (ein Bauer)
(a farmer's work)
13. die Einfahrt (unser Haus)
(the driveway of our house)

Descriptive adjectives may often be included in a genitive case phrase, as in the following examples:

das Haus des alten Mannes
(the old man's house)

der Preis einer schönen Pflanze
(the price of a beautiful plant)

das Haus unserer neuen Nachbarn
(our new neighbors' house)

What ending is used with all of the adjectives above?

The ending -en is used in all of these examples. In fact, the proper genitive ending for adjectives following "der" words and "kein" words is uniformly -en, regardless of the gender or number of the noun to which the adjective refers.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate genitive endings on the basis of the given English. Where no ending is required, leave blank.

1. my rich friends' home
das Haus mein ___ reich ___ Freunde ___
2. the elegant lady's hat
der Hut d ___ elegant ___ Dame ___
3. the prices of the expensive restaurants
die Preise d ___ teuer ___ Restaurants ___
4. our new teacher's [masc.] office
das Büro unser ___ neu ___ Lehrer ___
5. an American soldier's car
das Auto ein ___ amerikanisch ___ Soldat ___
6. the letters of your old girl friends
die Briefe dein ___ alt ___ Freundinnen ___

7. the young girl's birthday
der Geburtstag d jung Mädchen

8. the windows of the beautiful church
die Fenster d schön Kirche

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German

- _____ 1. meiner reichen
Freunde
- _____ 2. der eleganten Dame
- _____ 3. der teuren
Restaurants
- _____ 4. unseres neuen Lehrers
- _____ 5. eines amerikanischen
Soldaten
- _____ 6. deiner alten
Freundinnen
- _____ 7. des jungen Mädchens
- _____ 8. der schönen Kirche

START THE TAPE.

Say the phrases below, supplying the appropriate genitive endings (as required) on the basis of the given English.

1. the guests of the expensive hotel
die Gäste d.... teur.... Hotel....
2. the brother of my good friend
der Bruder mein.... gut.... Freund....
3. the great man's ideas
die Ideen d.... gross.... Mann....
4. the children of our nice neighbors
die Kinder unser.... nett.... Nachbar....
5. the new student's textbook
das Lehrbuch d.... neu.... Schüler....
6. the old lady's visit
der Besuch d.... alt.... Dame....
7. the toys of your small child
das Spielzeug eur.... klein.... Kind....
8. the bridges of a big river
die Brücken ein.... gross.... Fluss....

The following two exercises will serve as a summary of this section. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate genitive case ending. If no ending is required, leave that space blank.

1. We went with my sister's car.
Wir fahren mit dem Auto mein ___ Schwester ___.
2. I like the color of your new car.
Die Farbe dein ___ neu ___ Auto ___ gefällt mir.
3. Our old neighbor's house is being sold.
Das Haus unser ___ alt ___ Nachbar ___ wird verkauft.
4. Can you give me your doctor's address?
Können Sie mir die Adresse Ihr ___ Arzt ___ geben?
5. Our town's churches are old.
Die Kirchen unser ___ Stadt ___ sind alt.
6. That's an American soldier's wife.
Das ist die Frau ein ___ amerikanisch ___ Soldat ___.
7. Are these your mother's suitcases?
Sind das die Koffer eur ___ Mutter ___?
8. Mrs. Meyer lives in her children's house.
Frau Meyer wohnt in dem Haus ihr ___ Kinder ___.
9. We are repairing the roof of our old house.
Wir reparieren das Dach unser ___ alt ___ Haus ___.

10. The farmer has cleaned the stables of his new horses.
Der Bauer hat die Ställe sein ___ neu ___ Pferde ___ saubergemacht.
11. Hans lives in a rich lady's house.
Hans wohnt in dem Haus ein ___ reich ___ Dame ___.
12. The child's mother would like to talk to the teacher.
Die Mutter d ___ Kind ___ möchte mit dem Lehrer sprechen.
13. Her brother's telephone was broken yesterday.
Das Telefon ihr ___ Bruder ___ war gestern kaputt.
14. The soldier's girl friend is visiting him.
Die Freundin d ___ Soldat ___ besucht ihn.
15. The lamps of our new house were expensive.
Die Lampen unser ___ neu ___ Haus ___ waren teuer.
16. Your father's cigars are good.
Die Zigarren Ihr ___ Vater ___ sind gut.
17. The days of a farmer are long.
Die Tage ein ___ Bauer ___ sind lang.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. meiner Schwester _____

_____ 2. deines neuen Autos _____

_____ 3. unseres alten Nachbarn _____

_____ 4. Ihres Arztes _____

_____ 5. unserer Stadt _____

_____ 6. eines amerikanischen Soldaten _____

_____ 7. eurer Mutter _____

_____ 8. ihrer Kinder _____

_____ 9. unseres alten Hauses _____

_____ 10. seiner neuen Pferde _____

_____ 11. einer reichen Dame _____

_____ 12. des Kindes _____

_____ 13. ihres Bruders _____

_____ 14. des Soldaten _____

_____ 15. unseres neuen Hauses _____

_____ 16. Ihres Vaters _____

_____ 17. eines Bauern _____

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate genitive endings (as required).

1. The price of his sports car was very high.
Der Preis sein.... Sportwagen.... war sehr hoch.
2. Her daughter's children are coming for a visit.
Die Kinder ihr.... Tochter.... kommen zu Besuch.
3. The windows of our new apartment are very big.
Die Fenster unser.... neu.... Wohnung sind sehr gross.
4. My neighbor's wife is a teacher.
Die Frau mein.... Nachbar.... ist Lehrerin.
5. Mr. Meyer is looking for his little son's bicycle.
Herr Meyer sucht das Fahrrad sein.... klein.... Sohn....
6. Are you still living in your parents' house?
Wohnen Sie immer noch im Haus Ihr.... Eltern....?
7. The children are playing in a corner of the garden.
Die Kinder spielen in einer Ecke d.... Garten....
8. The roof of the church is being repaired.
Das Dach d.... Kirche.... wird repariert.
9. The pretty girl's hair is blond.
Das Haar d.... hübsch.... Mädchen.... ist blond.

10. Once a year Mrs. Schulz cleans the basement of her house.

Einmal im Jahr macht Frau Schulz den Keller ihr.... Haus.... sauber.

11. Where are your friends' suitcases?

Wo sind die Koffer eur.... Freunde....?

12. Their parents' house is being sold.

Das Haus ihr.... Eltern.... wird verkauft.

13. The new teacher's office is large.

Das Büro d.... neu.... Lehrer.... ist gross.

NOTES

Section 2

Genitive Case of the
Interrogative and Relative Pronouns

Notice the following English sentence:

Whose hat is here?

The interrogative pronoun "whose" is rendered in German by wessen, the genitive form of the interrogative pronoun wer.

Notice the following examples:

Wessen Zeitung liegt auf dem Tisch?
(Whose newspaper is lying on the table?)

In wessen Haus hat er gewohnt?
(In whose house did he live?)

Wessen Freunde kommen heute abend?
(Whose friends are coming this evening?)

Wessen is invariable, that is to say, it never changes its form.

In spoken German, there is a tendency to use the formula:

wem gehört....? (or wem gehören....?)

rather than the interrogative pronoun wessen. For example:

Wem gehört der Hut?
(to whom does the hat belong?)

instead of Wessen Hut ist das?
(Whose hat is that?)

However, you should become familiar with the genitive case of the interrogative pronoun. In the following four exercises, write complete German sentences, substituting wessen for wem gehört (gehören).

1. Wem gehört der Sportwagen?

_____?
(Whose sports car is that?)

2. Wem gehören die Kinder?

_____?
(Whose children are those?)

3. Wem gehört das Buch?

_____?
(Whose book is that?)

4. Wem gehören die Schuhe?

_____?
(Whose shoes are those?)

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Wessen Sportwagen ist das?

2. Wessen Kinder sind das?

3. Wessen Buch ist das?

4. Wessen Schuhe sind das?

START THE TAPE.

The relative pronoun "whose", as in:

The man whose house we bought is living in Florida.

The lady whose house we bought is very nice.

is rendered in German by dessen or deren, the genitive forms of the relative pronoun der.

Dessen is used to refer to masculine and neuter singular nouns. Deren is used to refer to feminine singular nouns and to all plural nouns, regardless of gender. For example, in:

The man whose house we bought

the pronoun "whose" refers to "the man." In:

The lady whose house we bought

the pronoun "whose" refers to "the lady."

On this basis, fill in the appropriate German relative pronoun for the two sentences below:

1. Der Mann, _____ Haus wir gekauft haben, wohnt in Florida.

2. Die Dame, _____ Haus wir gekauft haben, ist sehr nett.

START THE TAPE.

The correct answers are dessen and deren, respectively.

Study the table below until you are confident of the genitive forms of the interrogative and relative pronouns, then turn the page for exercises:

Interrogative Pronoun

Relative Pronoun

wessen

dessen

(masculine and neuter singular)

deren

(feminine singular; all plurals)

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate genitive form of the interrogative pronoun wer, or the appropriate genitive form of the relative pronoun der, on the basis of the given English.

1. With whose friend were you in Cologne yesterday?
Mit _____ Freund warst du gestern in Köln?

2. The lady whose suitcases are standing there comes from America.
Die Dame, _____ Koffer dort stehen, kommt aus Amerika.

3. The man whose letter I received today wants to visit us.
Der Mann, _____ Brief ich heute bekam, will uns besuchen.

4. Whose car are you using today?
_____ Auto benutzt du heute?

5. The children whose mother is sick eat at their neighbors'.
Die Kinder, _____ Mutter krank ist, essen bei ihren Nachbarn.

6. The girl whose picture is on the table is my sister.
Das Mädchen, _____ Bild auf dem Tisch steht, ist meine Schwester.

7. Whose car is that in front of the house?
_____ Auto ist das dort vor dem Haus?

8. The students whose vacation starts tomorrow are packing their suitcases.
Die Schüler, _____ Ferien morgen beginnen, packen ihre Koffer.

9. Whose newspapers are those?
_____ Zeitungen sind das?

10. Mrs. Meyer, whose husband is a doctor, goes to the Riviera every year.
Frau Meyer, _____ Mann Arzt ist, fährt jedes Jahr an die Riviera.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. wessen

_____ 2. deren

_____ 3. dessen

_____ 4. Wessen

_____ 5. deren

_____ 6. dessen

_____ 7. Wessen

_____ 8. deren

_____ 9. Wessen

_____ 10. deren

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the genitive form of the interrogative or relative pronoun as required.

1. The author whose book I read is supposed to speak here tomorrow.
Der Autor, Buch ich gelesen habe, soll morgen hier sprechen.
2. Whose apartment did you use when you were in Munich?
.... Wohnung hast du benutzt, als du in München warst?
3. Whose office is that?
.... Büro ist das?
4. The student whose address you gave me does not live there any more.
Der Schüler, Adresse du mir gegeben hast, wohnt nicht mehr dort.

5. My grandmother, whose house is being repaired,
is staying with us.

Meine Grossmutter, Haus repariert wird,
wohnt bei uns.

6. Whose dresses are those?

.... Kleider sind das?

7. The gentleman whose German is very good lives in
Los Angeles.

Der Herr, Deutsch sehr gut ist, wohnt in
Los Angeles.

8. The neighbors whose bicycles we bought left for
California.

Die Nachbarn, Fahrräder wir gekauft haben,
sind nach Kalifornien gefahren.

9. Whose coat is that?

.... Mantel ist das?

10. His car, whose price was too high, has already
broken down.

Sein Auto, Preis zu hoch war, ist schon
kaputt.

Section 3

Genitive Case After Certain Prepositions

As mentioned at the beginning of the Lesson, the genitive case is also used following certain prepositions, even though no "possession" is implied. The most common of these are:

während (during)

Während des Abends regnete es.

(During the evening, it rained.)

statt
or (instead of)
anstatt

Statt des Mantels kaufte ich einen Anzug.

(Instead of the coat, I bought a suit.)

Note: Statt and anstatt have identical meanings. The shorter form statt is preferred in spoken German. For practice, you should use statt in the spoken exercises which follow, and anstatt in the written exercises.

trotz (in spite of)

Trotz des schlechten Wetters gingen wir zum Fussballspiel.

(In spite of the bad weather, we went to the soccer game.)

wegen (because of, due to, on account of)

Wegen des Regens bleibt Hans zu Hause.

(Because of the rain, Hans is staying at home.)

Study the above list of prepositions until you are sure of their spelling and English meaning, then turn the page for exercises.

START THE TAPE.

Write the appropriate German prepositions.

1. in spite of _____
2. during _____
3. because of, due to,
on account of _____
4. instead of _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Write the English equivalents of the following prepositions:

1. wegen _____
2. trotz _____
3. statt/anstatt _____
4. während _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Say the appropriate German prepositions:

1. instead of
2. because of, due to, on account of
3. during
4. in spite of

START THE TAPE.

Write the appropriate German prepositional phrase on the basis of the given English. For example:

You see: because of the rain

You write: wegen des Regens

1. during the night _____
2. on account of the high prices _____

3. instead of the cigars _____
4. in spite of his money _____
5. because of the sun _____
6. during the morning _____
7. instead of the bread _____

Fill in the phrase on the words given in parentheses. If you made any mistakes, write the words given in parentheses.

1. During the week, we seldom go out. (die Woche)
_____ gehen wir selten aus.
2. Because of the rain, we didn't go to the beach. (der Regen)
_____ fuhren wir nicht an den Strand.
3. Instead of a book, they bought her flowers. (ein Buch)
_____ kauften sie ihr Blumen.
4. In spite of the color, I like the car. (die Farbe)
_____ gefällt mir das Auto.
5. One is not allowed to smoke during dinner. (das Essen)
_____ darf man nicht rauchen.
6. Because of my cold, we had to stay home. (meine Erkältung)
_____ mussten wir zu Hause bleiben.
7. Instead of a new dress, she bought herself a coat. (neu - ein Kleid)
_____ kaufte sie sich einen Mantel.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. trotz
- _____ 2. während
- _____ 3. wegen
- _____ 4. anstatt

If you made any mistakes, write the correct English.

- _____ 1. because of, due to,
on account of
- _____ 2. in spite of
- _____ 3. instead of
- _____ 4. during

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. während der Nacht
- _____ 2. wegen der hohen Preise
- _____ 3. anstatt der Zigarren
- _____ 4. trotz seines Geldes
- _____ 5. wegen der Sonne

- _____ 6. während des Morgens
- _____ 7. anstatt des Brotes

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. Während der Woche
- _____ 2. Wegen des Regens
- _____ 3. Anstatt eines Buches
- _____ 4. Trotz der Farbe
- _____ 5. Während des Essens
- _____ 6. Wegen meiner Erkältung
- _____ 7. Anstatt eines neuen
Kleides

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate prepositional phrase on the basis of the given English

1. Instead of the girl, Mrs. Müller opened the door.
(das Mädchen)
.... öffnete Frau Müller die Tür.
2. In spite of the high prices, they bought themselves a house. (hoch - der Preis)
.... kauften sie sich ein Haus.
3. We had nice weather during the summer. (der Sommer)
.... hatten wir schönes Wetter.
4. Because of the good food, we stayed at this hotel.
(gut - das Essen)
.... wohnten wir in diesem Hotel.
5. In spite of the long trip we weren't tired.
(lang - die Reise)
.... waren wir nicht müde.
6. During the evening he told us about his vacation.
(der Abend)
.... erzählte er uns von seinem Urlaub.
7. Instead of the milk, he drank the coffee.
(die Milch)
.... trank er den Kaffee.
8. Because of the cold weather, the children couldn't play in the garden. (kalt - das Wetter)
.... konnten die Kinder nicht im Garten spielen.

Genitive Case Forms of Proper Nouns

In German, the genitive form of proper nouns is roughly analogous to the English possessive "apostrophe plus s" pattern (Peter's book, Father's car, Germany's capital, etc.). However, in German, the apostrophe is in most cases omitted:

Peters Buch, Vaters Auto, Deutschlands Hauptstadt.

The specific rules are as follows:

- 1) With proper nouns, the genitive (i.e., possessive) is formed by adding -s to the noun, regardless of its gender:

Peters Buch, Ingrids Fahrrad, Marias Zimmer.

- 2) The exceptions to the above rule are those proper nouns which end in an "s-" sound. This includes nouns ending with the letters -s, -x, or -z. For these nouns, two possibilities exist. The possessive can be formed by simply adding an apostrophe (Max' Auto) OR by adding -ens without an apostrophe (Maxens Auto). The apostrophe form is commonly used only in writing, and the -ens form can be used in either speech or writing. We will adopt the convention of using the apostrophe form for written exercises and the -ens form for spoken exercises.

Study the two rules above until you are sure of the possessive formation for proper nouns, then turn the page for exercises.

START THE TAPE.

Write the German equivalent of the English possessives shown below. Follow the suggested convention for written German.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|-------|------------|
| 1. Peter's wife | _____ | Frau |
| 2. Karl's car | _____ | Auto |
| 3. Hans' books | _____ | Bücher |
| 4. Father's ¹ shoes | _____ | Schuhe |
| 5. Fritz' toothbrush | _____ | Zahnbürste |
| 6. Ingrid's children | _____ | Kinder |
| 7. Mother's ¹ parents | _____ | Eltern |
| 8. Dr. Schulz'
students | _____ | Schüler |
| 9. Karla's apartment | _____ | Wohnung |

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Write the German equivalent of the English possessives shown below, following the instructions of the previous exercise.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-------|----------|
| 1. Maria's dress | _____ | Kleid |
| 2. Max's bicycle | _____ | Fahrrad |
| 3. Mrs. Meyer's husband | _____ | Mann |
| 4. Father's store | _____ | Geschäft |
| 5. Hans' present | _____ | Geschenk |
| 6. Paul's visit | _____ | Besuch |
| 7. Mother's food | _____ | Essen |
| 8. Mr. Müller's
suitcases | _____ | Koffer |
| 9. Lieutenant Jones' car | _____ | Auto |

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

¹Note that when used without the article, the words "father" and "mother" are referring to a particular person, i.e. the speaker's mother or father, and are treated in this context as proper nouns.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. Peters
- _____ 2. Karls
- _____ 3. Hans'
- _____ 4. Vaters
- _____ 5. Fritz'
- _____ 6. Ingrids
- _____ 7. Mutters
- _____ 8. Dr. Schulz'
- _____ 9. Karlas

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. Marias
- _____ 2. Max'
- _____ 3. Frau Meyers
- _____ 4. Vaters
- _____ 5. Hans'
- _____ 6. Pauls
- _____ 7. Mutters

_____ 8. Herrn Müllers

_____ 9. Leutnant Jones'

START THE TAPE.

Say the German equivalent of the English possessives shown below, following the suggested convention for spoken exercises.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Mrs. Schmidt's house | Haus |
| 2. Franz' bicycle | Fahrrad |
| 3. Peter's books | Bücher |
| 4. Mr. Müller's coat | Mantel |
| 5. Hans' teacher | Lehrer |
| 6. Father's car | Auto |
| 7. Max's parents | Eltern |
| 8. Karla's new dress | neues Kleid |
| 9. Paul's vacation | Ferien |
| 10. Mr. Meyer's new suit | neuer Anzug |

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate genitive form of the proper nouns on the basis of the given English. Follow the suggested convention for written German.

START THE TAPE.

1. Professor Schulz' car is being repaired.

Professor _____ Auto wird repariert.

2. Is that Hans' book?

Ist das _____ Buch?

3. Peter's girl friend is also coming along.

_____ Freundin kommt auch mit.

4. Max's watch is lying on the table.

_____ Uhr liegt auf dem Tisch.

5. Mr. Meyer's house is being sold.

Herrn _____ Haus wird verkauft.

6. Maria's children are very nice.

_____ Kinder sind sehr nett.

7. Do you know Ingrid's husband?

Kennst du _____ Mann?

8. Mrs. Müller's son is learning German.

Frau _____ Sohn lernt Deutsch.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate genitive form of the proper nouns on the basis of the given English. Follow the suggested convention for spoken German.

1. Hans' brother is studying in Munich.

.... Bruder studiert in München.

2. Mrs. Müller's garden is beautiful.

Frau Garten ist schön.

3. Karl's sister lives in the country.

.... Schwester wohnt auf dem Land.

4. Professor Schulz' new book is interesting.

Professor neues Buch ist interessant.

5. Mr. Meyer's dog always runs through our garden.

Herrn Hund läuft immer durch unseren Garten.

6. Ingrid's idea was very good.

.... Idee war sehr gut.

7. Peter's wife is from Germany.

.... Frau kommt aus Deutschland.

8. Franz' old bicycle cannot be repaired.

.... altes Fahrrad kann nicht repariert werden.

In spoken German, the genitive construction with proper nouns is often avoided by substituting a prepositional phrase consisting of von + dative object. Thus, instead of saying Karls Auto, using the genitive possessive you have just studied, a German speaker might say das Auto von Karl.

Say complete German sentences, using a von + dative object construction instead of the genitive construction shown.

1. Herrn Müllers Garten ist sehr gross.
2. Hansens Bruder will uns besuchen.
3. Maxens Sportwagen war sehr teuer.
4. Dort steht Herrn Schmidts Sohn.
5. Peters Mutter ist noch sehr jung.
6. Thomas Manns Bücher werden viel gelesen.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- | | |
|-------|------------|
| _____ | 1. Schulz' |
| _____ | 2. Hans' |
| _____ | 3. Peters |
| _____ | 4. Max' |
| _____ | 5. Meyers |
| _____ | 6. Marias |
| _____ | 7. Ingrids |
| _____ | 8. Müllers |

Passive Voice (Present Perfect Tense)

In **Lesson 20**, you learned the formation and use of the passive voice in the present tense, as exemplified by sentences such as the following:

Herr Müller wird zum Zug gebracht.
(Mr. Müller is being taken to the train.)

Seine Bücher werden viel gelesen.
(His books are being read a lot.)

Werden wir auch eingeladen?
(Are we also being invited?)

In this **Lesson**, you will learn to form and use the present perfect tense of passive constructions, as used in the German equivalents of sentences such as:

Mr. Müller has been taken to the train. or: was taken to the train

His books have been read a lot. or: were read a lot.

Have we also been invited? or: Were we also invited?

The alternative Simple Past (Imperfect Tense) renderings of the above English examples depend entirely upon situational contexts. That is to say that an English translation of a German Present Perfect Tense construction in the Passive Voice may use either the Simple Past Passive or the Present Perfect Passive.

Unless stylistically or contextually uncalled for, English translations throughout this **Lesson** will employ the Present Perfect Tense to conform structurally with the German exercises.

Section 1

Present Perfect Tense in the Passive Voice

From **Lesson 20**, you are aware of the word order for passive voice sentences in the present tense:

Das Auto	wird	schnell	repariert.
	↓		↓
	conjugated present		past participle
	tense form of <u>werden</u>		of main verb

(The car is being repaired quickly.)

The present perfect tense of passive sentences such as the above is formed by using the present perfect tense of the auxiliary werden rather than the present tense of werden.

Is the present perfect tense of werden formed with haben or sein?

As a verb of becoming (that is to say, change of condition), werden uses the auxiliary sein to form the present perfect tense (and certain other compound tenses).

With this background in mind, you should not be overly surprised to find that the present perfect form of the example German sentence is:

Das Auto ist schnell repariert worden.

Conjugated present tense form of sein Past participle of main verb

Past participle of the auxiliary verb werden

(The car has been repaired quickly.)

The two forms of werden were pointed out to you in **Lesson 28**. Please differentiate between worden as being the past participle of werden as an auxiliary verb, and geworden as the past participle of werden as an independent (or main) verb (to become):

Das Auto ist schnell repariert worden.
(past participle of auxiliary werden)

Das Wetter ist schön geworden.
(The weather has become nice.)
(past participle of independent verb werden)

Listen to and repeat each of the following pairs of sentences, in the present passive and present perfect passive, respectively. Note carefully the word order, as well as the English translations.

1. Du wirst oft gesucht.
(You are often being looked for.)
Du bist oft gesucht worden.
(You have been often looked for.)
2. Die Offiziere werden begrüsst.
(The officers are being greeted.)

Die Offiziere sind begrüsst worden.)
(The officers have been greeted.)

3. Ihr werdet abgeholt.
(You are being picked up.)
Ihr seid abgeholt worden.
(You have been picked up.)
4. Ich werde gerade gerufen.
(I am just now being called.)
Ich bin gerade gerufen worden.
(I have been called just now.)
5. Das Kind wird warm angezogen.
(The child is being dressed warmly.)
Das Kind ist warm angezogen worden.
(The child has been dressed warmly.)
6. Wir werden schnell nach Hause gebracht.
(We are being taken home quickly.)
Wir sind schnell nach Hause gebracht worden.
(We have been taken home quickly.)
7. Sie werden im Büro gebraucht.
(You are needed at the office.)
Sie sind im Büro gebraucht worden.
(You were needed at the office.)

Listen to the following passive constructions and make a check mark under "Present Passive" or "Present Perfect Passive" as the case may be.

	<u>Present Passive</u>	<u>Present Perfect Passive</u>
1.	_____	_____
2.	_____	_____
3.	_____	_____
4.	_____	_____
5.	_____	_____

You should have checked numbers 1 and 4 in the present passive column and numbers 2, 3 and 5 in the present perfect passive column. If you made any mistakes replay this portion of the tape.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present perfect tense of the passive voice, on the basis of the present tense passive sentences.

1. Dieses Bier wird viel getrunken.

Dieses Bier _____ viel _____
_____.

2. Die Kinder werden jeden Abend gebadet.

Die Kinder _____ jeden Abend _____
_____.

3. Er wird höflich begrüßt.

Er _____ höflich _____.

4. Sonntags werden wir oft eingeladen.

Sonntags _____ wir oft _____.

5. Das Museum wird um neun Uhr geöffnet.

Das Museum _____ um neun Uhr _____
_____.

6. Wirst du oft besucht?

_____ du oft _____?

7. Das Wörterbuch wird oft gebraucht.

Das Wörterbuch _____ oft _____
_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. ist getrunken
worden
- _____ 2. sind gebadet
worden
- _____ 3. ist gegrüsst
worden
- _____ 4. sind eingeladen
worden
- _____ 5. ist geöffnet
worden
- _____ 6. Bist besucht
worden
- _____ 7. ist gebraucht
worden

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate present perfect tense of the passive voice, on the basis of the present tense passive sentences shown.

1. Diese Zigarre wird viel geraucht.
Diese Zigarre viel
2. Ich werde oft gesucht.
Ich oft
3. Wirst du immer zum Flugplatz gebracht?
.... du immer zum Flugplatz?
4. Dieses warme Bier wird nicht getrunken.
Dieses warme Bier nicht
5. Die Schuhe werden schnell repariert.
Die Schuhe schnell
6. Warum wird das Kind nicht früher ins Bett gelegt?
Warum das Kind nicht früher ins Bett?
7. Diese Autos werden einmal im Monat gewaschen.
Diese Autos einmal im Monat

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Du bist gerufen worden.

_____.

2. Ihr seid gesucht worden.

_____.

3. Die Kinder sind täglich gebadet worden.

_____.

4. Wir sind vom Kino abgeholt worden.

_____.

5. Das Auto ist gestern nicht repariert worden.

_____.

6. Sind Sie oft besucht worden?

_____?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Listen to each of the following German sentences and say the corresponding English sentences.

1. Bist du nicht eingeladen worden?

2. Das Kind ist schnell angezogen worden.

3. Hans ist zum Arzt gebracht worden.

4. Wir sind immer begrüßt worden.

5. Das Geschenk ist sofort aufgemacht worden.

6. Sind Sie von der Wohnung abgeholt worden?

As was pointed out before, you normally have the choice in English to use either the Past (Imperfect) Passive or the Present Perfect Passive. For instance:

Bist du nicht eingeladen worden?

(Haven't you been invited?)

or: (Weren't you invited?)

The correct answers are:

NOTES

1. You have been called. (You were called.)
2. You have been looked for. (You were looked for.)
3. The children have been bathed daily. (The children were bathed daily.)
4. We have been picked up from the movie theater. (We were picked up from the movie theater.)
5. The car has not been repaired yesterday. (The car was not repaired yesterday.)
6. Have you been visited often? (Were you often visited?)

Fill in the blanks to form a present perfect tense sentence in the passive voice, on the model of the present tense passive sentence supplied. For example:

You see: Auf dem Oktoberfest wird viel Bier getrunken.

(A lot of beer is being drunk at the Oktoberfest.)

You write: Auf dem Oktoberfest ist viel Bier getrunken worden.

(A lot of beer has been drunk at the Oktoberfest.)

Be careful to use proper word order.

1. Diese alte Stadt wird oft von amerikanischen Soldaten besucht.

Diese alte Stadt _____

2. Das Auto wird in die Garage gefahren.

Das Auto _____

3. Die Kinder werden jeden Abend gewaschen.

Die Kinder _____

4. Wirst du von Hans abgeholt?

_____ du von Hans _____?

5. Peters Sportwagen wird repariert.

Peters Sportwagen _____

6. Wir werden von Professor Müller gerufen.

Wir _____

7. Das Essen wird auf den Tisch gestellt.

Das Essen _____

8. Seine Bücher werden immer gelesen.

Seine Bücher _____

9. Werdet ihr ins Büro gebracht?

_____ ihr _____?

10. Die Sätze werden schnell gelernt.

Die Sätze _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. ist oft von amerikanischen Soldaten besucht worden.

2. ist in die Garage gefahren worden.

3. sind jeden Abend gewaschen worden.

4. Bist abgeholt worden?

5. ist repariert worden.

6. sind von Professor Müller gerufen worden.

7. ist auf den Tisch gestellt worden.

8. sind immer gelesen worden.

9. Seid ins Büro gebracht worden?

10. sind schnell gelernt worden..

START THE TAPE.

Say complete present perfect tense passive sentences on the basis of the present tense passive construction shown below. Pay particular attention to word order.

1. Unser Dach wird repariert.

Unser Dach

2. Das Kind unseres Nachbarn wird den ganzen Tag gesucht.

Das Kind unseres Nachbarn

3. Wird dein Auto jeden Samstag gewaschen?

.... dein Auto?

4. Der kranke Schüler wird von seinen Freunden besucht.

Der kranke Schüler

5. Herr Meyer wird vom Hotel abgeholt.

Herr Meyer

6. Die Bücher werden sofort gebraucht.

Die Bücher

7. Ihr werdet von den Soldaten gegrüsst.

Ihr

8. Die Zeitung wird auf den Tisch gelegt.
Die Zeitung
9. Der neue Laden wird heute um acht Uhr geöffnet.
Der neue Laden
10. Dieses Museum wird viel besucht.
Dieses Museum

Write in the appropriate present perfect passive construction, on the basis of the given English and the verbs in parentheses.

1. You have been looked for all over town. (suchen)
Sie _____ in der ganzen Stadt _____.
2. The children have been taken to school. (bringen)
Die Kinder _____ zur Schule _____.
3. The car has been parked in front of the house.
(parken)
Das Auto _____ vor dem Haus _____.
4. We have been greeted by the new neighbors.
(grüssen)
Wir _____ von den neuen Nachbarn _____.

5. The letter has been written right away. (schreiben)
Der Brief _____ sofort _____.
6. Have you been driven through town? (fahren)
_____ du durch die Stadt _____
_____?
7. The good wine has been drunk quickly. (trinken)
Der gute Wein _____ schnell _____.
8. You have been needed in the kitchen. (brauchen)
Du _____ in der Küche _____.
9. The book has been written in one month. (schreiben)
Das Buch _____ in einem Monat _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. sind gesucht
worden
- _____ 2. sind gebracht
worden
- _____ 3. ist geparkt
worden
- _____ 4. sind gegrüsst
worden
- _____ 5. ist geschrieben
worden
- _____ 6. Bist gefahren
worden
- _____ 7. ist getrunken
worden
- _____ 8. bist gebraucht
worden

_____ 9. ist geschrieben
worden

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the present perfect passive construction on the basis of the given English and the verb shown in parentheses.

1. The cars have been washed once a week. (waschen)
Die Autos einmal in der Woche
2. The sick teacher has been visited by his students.
(besuchen)
Der kranke Lehrer von seinen Schülern
3. Why haven't we been invited? (einladen)
Warum wir nicht?
4. Have the books already been picked up? (abholen)
.... die Bücher schon?
5. Has your house been sold yet? (verkaufen)
.... euer Haus schon?
6. That well-known newspaper has been read in the
entire country. (lesen)
Diese bekannte Zeitung im ganzen Land
7. About that, not much has been said. (sagen)
Darüber nicht viel
8. A lot of wine has been drunk last year. (trinken)
Im letzten Jahr viel Wein

Present Perfect Passive with:"Von + Agent" Phrases; Dative Verbs; Omission of "Man"

In **Lesson 28**, you practiced present tense passive sentences which used a "von + agent" phrase to indicate the person or thing performing the action of the sentence. For example:

Das Essen wird von dem Kellner gebracht.

(The food is brought by the waiter.)

Von + agent phrases can also be used in present perfect tense passive sentences. With regard to word order, the von + agent phrase continues to be placed immediately following the inflected verb forms, except for the precedence accorded to adverbs and expressions of time. With this in mind, how would you say the German equivalent of:

"The food has been brought by the waiter immediately,"

using the present perfect tense?

Since the inflected verb in present perfect passive sentences is the appropriate present tense form of sein, the correct German sentence would be:

Das Essen ist sofort von dem Kellner gebracht worden.

Say complete sentences in the present perfect tense on the basis of the present tense sentences shown.

1. Der Brief wird von Hans geschrieben.
2. Die Kinder werden von Frau Müller gewaschen.
3. Das Auto wird von dem Soldaten repariert.
4. Wir werden jeden Morgen von unserem Nachbarn abgeholt.
5. Herr Meyer wird von seinem Vater angerufen.
6. Das Essen wird vom Kellner auf den Tisch gestellt.
7. Wir werden jedes Jahr von unseren Eltern besucht.
8. Wirst du von Hans zum Kino gebracht?
9. Ihr werdet von dem Soldaten begrüßt.

When passive sentences such as "The man is being helped" are rendered in German, it is necessary to remember that the verb in question (helfen) and other verbs such as glauben, danken, and antworten require dative case objects. Thus, the present tense passive (as discussed in **Lesson 28**) would be:

Dem Mann wird geholfen.

(The man is being helped.)

The same principle applies when "dative verbs" are used in present perfect passive constructions. For example, the German equivalent of:

"The man has been helped."

is:

Dem Mann ist geholfen worden.

How would you say: "The men have been helped"?

You will remember from Lesson 28 that the conjugated verb (i.e., here the auxiliary sein) agrees with an implied subject in the third person singular. This is true for a passive construction which is governed by a "dative-only" verb even if the dative object is plural.

You would say:

Den Männern ist geholfen worden.

Listen to and repeat the following present perfect passive constructions using a dative object. Note in each case the "dative verb" involved.

1. Mir ist gedankt worden.
(I have been thanked.)
2. Uns ist nicht geantwortet worden.
(We haven't been answered.)
3. Ist dir geholfen worden?
(Have you been helped?)
4. Ihm ist nicht geglaubt worden.
(He hasn't been believed.)

5. Herrn Meyer ist nicht geantwortet worden.
(Mr. Meyer hasn't been answered.)
6. Den Kindern ist geholfen worden.
(The children have been helped.)

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present perfect tense of the passive on the basis of the given English and the verbs in parentheses. Note that the verbs require the dative case.

1. He has been helped with his homework. (helfen)
_____ bei seinen Hausaufgaben _____
_____.
2. The parents have been believed by the children. (glauben)
_____ von den Kindern _____
_____.
3. He has never been thanked for his help. (danken)
_____ nie für seine Hilfe _____
_____.
4. We have been quickly answered. (antworten)
_____ schnell _____.
5. They have always been helped. (helfen)
_____ immer _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate present perfect tense of the passive on the basis of the given English and the verbs in parentheses.

1. They have never been believed. (glauben)
.... nie
2. We have been thanked for the beautiful present. (danken)
.... für das schöne Geschenk
3. He has been answered right away. (antworten)
.... sofort
4. Our father has always been believed. (glauben)
.... Vater immer
5. I have been helped by my friends. (helfen)
.... von meinen Freunden

You are already familiar with the present tense form of active voice sentences using the impersonal pronoun man, as in:

Man ruft den Kellner.
(They are calling the waiter.)

Man repariert die Uhr.
(Someone is repairing the watch.)

Present tense sentences with man can also be expressed using a passive construction, in which case man is omitted (that is, it can never be used as an agent with von) and the sentence follows the regular passive pattern for present tense sentences:

Der Kellner wird gerufen.

(The waiter is being called.)

Die Uhr wird repariert.

(The watch is being repaired.)

The same possibilities--man with the active voice, and the passive voice omitting man--exist in the present perfect tense.

Man hat den Kellner gerufen.

(They have called the waiter.)

Man hat die Uhr repariert.

(Someone has repaired the watch.)

Both of these active voice sentences in the present perfect tense could be expressed using a present perfect passive construction:

Der Kellner ist gerufen worden.

(The waiter has been called.)

Die Uhr ist repariert worden.

(The watch has been repaired.)

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Ihm ist geholfen worden.

2. Den Eltern ist geglaubt worden.

3. Ihm ist gedankt worden.

4. Uns ist geantwortet worden.

5. Ihnen ist geholfen worden.

NOTES

Write present perfect tense passive sentences on the basis of the active man-sentences. For example:

You see: Man hat das Auto in die Garage gefahren.

You write: Das Auto ist in die Garage gefahren worden.

In some cases, a dative verb is involved, requiring a different pattern. For example:

You see: Man hat ihm nicht geholfen.

You write: Ihm ist nicht geholfen worden.

1. Man hat ihn den ganzen Tag gesucht.

_____ den ganzen Tag _____.

(They have been looking for him all day.)

2. Man hat uns für das schöne Geschenk gedankt.

_____ für das schöne Geschenk _____

(They have thanked us for the beautiful present.)

3. Warum hat man den Kindern nicht geglaubt?

Warum _____ nicht _____

? (Why has nobody believed the children?)

4. Man hat ihm immer gern geholfen.

_____ immer gern _____.

(One has always helped him gladly.)

5. Man hat den Kellner mehrere Male gerufen.

Der Kellner _____ mehrere Male _____

(People have been calling the waiter several times.)

6. Diese Kirche hat man oft besucht.

Diese Kirche _____ oft _____.

(Many people have been visiting this church.)

7. Man hat uns die Stadt gezeigt.

Die Stadt _____ uns _____.

(Someone has been showing us the town.)

8. Man hat ihnen einfach nicht geantwortet.

_____ einfach nicht _____.

(They simply haven't answered them.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Er ist gesucht worden.

2. Uns ist gedankt worden.

3. ist den Kindern geglaubt worden?

4. Ihm ist geholfen worden.

5. ist gerufen worden.

6. ist besucht worden.

7. ist gezeigt worden.

8. Ihnen ist geantwortet worden.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, changing the present perfect active sentences with man into present perfect passive constructions.

1. Man hat Inge zum Bahnhof gebracht.

Inge zum Bahnhof

(Inge has been brought to the train station.)

2. Man hat mir für die Blumen gedankt.

Mir für die Blumen

(I have been thanked for the flowers.)

3. Man hat gestern abend viel Bier getrunken.

Gestern abend viel Bier

(A lot of beer has been drunk last night.)

4. Man hat uns immer sofort geholfen.

Uns immer sofort

(We have always been helped right away.)

5. Man hat ihr nicht auf ihre Frage geantwortet.

Ihr nicht auf ihre Frage

(Her question has not been answered.)

6. Man hat uns davon nichts gesagt.

Uns nichts davon

(We have not been told about that.)

7. Man hat im letzten Jahr viel gelernt.

Im letzten Jahr viel

(A lot has been learned last year.)

Present and Past Participles

In this **Lesson**, you will learn to use present participles and past participles as adverbs, predicate adjectives, and descriptive adjectives. The following sections are included:

1. Formation of Present Participles; Review of Past Participles
2. Present and Past Participles Used as Adverbs
3. Present and Past Participles Used as Predicate Adjectives
4. Present and Past Participles Used as Descriptive Adjectives

NOTES

Formation of Present Participles;Review of Past Participles

You are already familiar with the present participles of English verbs. These are the verb forms which end in "-ing," as for example: "running," "singing," "watching," "believing," and so forth. German verbs also have a present participle form, which is produced by adding the ending -d to the complete infinitive form. For example, the present participle of lesen is: lesend.

Write the present participle of each of the following verbs on the lines provided.

1. baden _____
2. liegen _____
3. fahren _____
4. bedeuten _____
5. bitten _____
6. schlafen _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. badend
- _____ 2. liegend
- _____ 3. fahrend
- _____ 4. bedeutend
- _____ 5. bittend
- _____ 6. schlafend

START THE TAPE.

Say the present participle of each of the following verbs. Note carefully the pronunciation of the present participle and the difference in sound between it and the infinitive.

- 1. lieben
- 2. schreiben
- 3. lernen
- 4. grüssen
- 5. sehen
- 6. landen

In your work with **Lessons 22** and 21, you learned the past participles of a number of "weak," "strong," and "mixed" verbs, as for example:

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
gebrauchen	gebraucht (used)
trinken	getrunken (drunk)
denken	gedacht (thought)

In the following sections of this **Lesson**, you will be asked to use both present and past participles as adverbs, predicate adjectives, and descriptive adjectives. Before beginning this work, you should study the present and past participles of the verbs to be used in the **Lesson**. Please note that the original meaning of the verb frequently expands. In fact, some participles have become almost completely disassociated from the meaning of the infinitive verb form and are now used mostly as adjectives or adverbs. In these instances the participle is strictly a vocabulary item and the infinitive verb form to which it is etymologically linked has been omitted as being irrelevant to this **Lesson**.

The following regular weak verbs will be used in this **Lesson**. Listen to and repeat the infinitive, the present participle, and the past participle. In some cases you will only listen to and repeat a part of the pattern, as indicated by blanks.

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Present Participle</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
abholen (pick up)	abholend (picking up)	abgeholt (picked up)

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Present Participle</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>	bezahlen (pay for)	bezahrend (paying for)	bezahlt (paid for)
arbeiten (work)	arbeitend (working)	gearbeitet (worked)	dauern (last)	dauernd (lasting, incessantly, constantly)	gedauert (lasted)
aufmachen (open)	aufmachend (opening)	aufgemacht (opened)			
aufregen (excite)	aufregend (exciting)	aufgeregt (excited)			
				Sie besuchten ihn dauernd. (They constantly visited him.)	
ausfüllen (fill out)	ausfüllend (filling out)	ausgefüllt (filled out)	erklären (explain)	erklärend (explaining)	erklärt (explained)
---	---	ausgezeichnet (excellent)	gebrauchen (use)	gebrauchend (using)	gebraucht (used)
baden (bathe; swim)	badend (bathing; swimming)	gebadet (bathed; swum)	kaufen (buy)	kaufend (buying)	gekauft (bought)
			---	---	kompliziert (complicated)
bauen (build)	bauend (building)	gebaut (built)	lachen (laugh)	lachend (laughing)	gelacht (laughed)
---	bedeutend (significant, important)	---	landen (land)	landend (landing)	gelandet (landed)
			lernen (learn)	lernend (learning)	gelernt (learned, trained)
	Sein letztes Buch ist bedeutend. (His last book is significant.)		lieben (love)	liebend (loving)	geliebt (loved; beloved)
bestellen (order)	bestellend (ordering)	bestellt (ordered)	öffnen (open)	öffnend (opening)	geöffnet (opened)
besuchen (visit)	besuchend (visiting)	besucht (visited)			

reisen (travel)	reisend (traveling)	gereist (traveled)
--------------------	------------------------	-----------------------

spielen (play)	spielend (playing, easily)	gespielt (played)
-------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------

Hans gewann das Rennen spielend.

(Hans won the race easily.)

verkaufen (sell)	verkauft (selling)	verkauft (sold)
---------------------	-----------------------	--------------------

Stop the tape and study further as required.

The following irregular verbs will be used in this module. Listen to and repeat the infinitive, the present participle, and the past participle. Extended meanings of some of these participles are shown in parentheses, together with example sentences.

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Present Participle</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
abfahren (leave, depart)	abfahrend (leaving, departing)	abgefahren (left, departed)
ankommen (arrive)	ankommend (arriving)	angekommen (arrived)
beginnen (begin)	beginnend (beginning)	begonnen (began)
einladen (invite)	einladend (inviting)	eingeladen (invited)
eintreten (enter)	eintretend (entering)	eingetreten (entered)
essen (eat)	essend (eating)	gegessen (eaten)

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Present Participle</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
-------------------	---------------------------	------------------------

gewinnen (win)	gewinnend (winning; also of per- sonality traits)	gewonnen (won)
-------------------	---	-------------------

Inge hat eine gewinnende Art. [die Art]

Inge has a winning manner.

leihen (lend)	leihend (lending)	geliehen (lent)
------------------	----------------------	--------------------

lesen (read)	lesend (reading)	gelesen (read)
-----------------	---------------------	-------------------

schlafen (sleep)	schlafend (sleeping)	geschlafen (slept)
---------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------

schlagen (beat, hit; defeat)	schlagend (beating, hitting; defeating)	geschlagen (beaten, hit; defeated)
------------------------------------	--	--

Ist das die geschlagene Mannschaft?

(Is that the defeated team?)

schliessen (close, shut)	schliessend (closing)	geschlossen (closed)
-----------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------

schreiben (write)	schreibend (writing)	geschrieben (written)
----------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------

singen (sing)	singend (singing)	gesungen (sung)
------------------	----------------------	--------------------

stehen (stand)	stehend (standing)	gestanden (stood)
-------------------	-----------------------	----------------------

trinken (drink)	trinkend (drinking)	getrunken (drunk)
verlieren (lose)	verlierend (losing)	verloren (lost)
waschen (wash)	waschend (washing)	gewaschen (washed)
zurückbringen (bring back, return [of things])	zurückbringend (bringing back, returning)	zurückgebracht (brought back, returned)
zurückkommen (come back, return [of persons])	zurückkommend (coming back, returning)	zurückgekommen (come back, returned)

Stop your tape and study further as required.

Section 2

Das Auto fährt gut.

(The car runs well.)

Present and Past Participles Used as Adverbs

From your knowledge of English grammar and the discussion in Section 4 of **Lesson 26**, you are probably acquainted with the concept of adverbs as words which qualify or give additional information about verbs. Some English examples are as follows:

1. The boy runs quickly.
2. We often went to the museum.

In sentence 1, the adverb "quickly" modifies the verb "runs," and gives additional information about the act of running (here, its speed).

In sentence 2, the adverb "often" modifies the verb "went," and gives additional information about the frequency with which the action of the verb took place.

From **Lesson 26**, you are already familiar with some German words which are "pure" adverbs (i.e., words which can function only as adverbs). Examples are:

oft	(often)
lange	(long, for a long time)
gern	(gladly, willingly)

In **Lesson 26**, you also learned that it is possible to use certain German adjectives in an adverbial manner, as in:

Present and past participles can also be used as adverbs, as in the following examples:

Professor Schulz sass schreibend in seinem Büro.

(Professor Schulz sat writing in his office.)

Er spricht ausgezeichnet Deutsch.

(He speaks German excellently.)

When a present participle or past participle is used as an adverb, does the adverb change its form?

As is always the case with adverbs or other words used adverbially, present or past participles used as adverbs are invariable, that is to say, have only a single unchanging form in all instances. The adverbial form of the present participle is always the full infinitive plus the ending -d, and the adverbial form of the past participle is always simply the past participle itself.

Generally speaking, the present participle of both transitive and intransitive verbs denotes continuing time and has an active meaning. The past participle (inherently expressing a completed process or state) has a passive meaning for all transitive verbs, and an active meaning for most intransitive verbs.

Listen to and repeat the following German sentences which show both present participles and past participles being used adverbially in complete sentence contexts.

1. Er rief dauernd seinen Freund an.
(He constantly called his friend on the phone.)
2. Die Kinder kamen aufgeregt nach Hause.
(The children came home excited.)
3. Die Soldaten marschierten singend durch die Stadt.
(The soldiers marched singing through the town.)
4. Stehend unterhielten sie sich.
(They conversed while standing.)
5. Das lässt sich spielend machen.
(That can easily be done.)
6. Er lag schlafend auf dem Sofa.
(He lay sleeping on the sofa.)
7. Ingrid sass lesend in der Bibliothek.
(Ingrid sat reading in the library.)
8. Die Kinder sangen ausgezeichnet.
(The children sang excellently.)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present or past participle of the verb shown in parentheses.

1. Freshly washed, the children went to school.
(waschen)

Sauber _____ gingen die Kinder in die Schule.

2. Mr. and Mrs. Meyer are sitting in the living room, smoking. (rauchen)

Herr and Frau Meyer sitzen _____ im Wohnzimmer.

3. Excited, she read her husband's letter.
(aufregen)

_____ las sie den Brief ihres Mannes.

4. You can learn that easily. (spielen)

Das kannst du _____ lernen.

5. Please send back the form filled out! (ausfüllen)

Schicken Sie bitte das Formular _____ zurück!

6. Greeting his friends, he came out of the house.
(grüssen)

Seine Freunde _____, kam er aus dem Haus.

7. Bathed, the children went to bed. (baden)

_____ gingen die Kinder zu Bett.

8. Mrs. Schmidt is looking laughingly into the camera. (lachen)

Frau Schmidt sieht _____ in die Kamera.

9. This food looks inviting. (einladen)

Dieses Essen sieht _____ aus.

10. Hans writes us constantly. (dauern)

Hans schreibt uns _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.
NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. gewaschen

_____ 2. rauchend

_____ 3. Aufgeregt

_____ 4. spielend

_____ 5. ausgefüllt

_____ 6. grüssend

_____ 7. Gebadet

_____ 8. lachend

_____ 9. einladend

_____ 10. dauernd

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate present participle or past participle on the basis of the given English.

1. Peter sat eating in the kitchen. (essen)
Peter sass in der Küche.
2. Sitting in the living room they talked about Professor Schulz' book. (sitzen)
Im Wohnzimmer, unterhielten sie sich über Professor Schulz' Buch.
3. Hans spent the evening drinking with his friends. (trinken)
Hans verbrachte den Abend _____ mit seinen Freunden.
4. The children run excited through the garden. (aufregen)
Die Kinder laufen durch den Garten.
5. The forms have been returned all filled out. (ausfüllen)
Die Formulare sind _____ zurückgegeben worden.
6. Last year the prices rose significantly. (---)
Letztes Jahr sind die Preise gestiegen.
7. The president stepped out of the car, waving. (grüssen)
Der Präsident stieg aus dem Auto.
8. Singing, he left the office. (singen)
.... verliess er das Büro.

9. The children are lying asleep in the car. (schlafen)

Die Kinder liegen im Auto.

NOTES

Present and PastParticiples Used as Predicate Adjectives

In **Lesson 15**, you learned that adjectival constructions in which the adjective follows a verb of being, becoming, or remaining (sein, werden, bleiben) use the so-called predicate adjective form which is simply the dictionary or "citation" form of the adjective. In other words, when adjectives are used in a predicate adjective construction, their form is invariable, as shown in the following examples:

Der Wein ist gut.

Die Milch ist gut.

Die Äpfel sind gut.

Present and past participles can be used in predicate adjective constructions, in which case they are also invariable:

Present Participle: Das Buch ist aufregend.
(The book is exciting.)

Past Participle: Der Zeitungsstil ist kompliziert.
(The newspaper style is complicated.)

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the present or past participle, used as a predicate adjective.

1. Is Inge's dress already picked up? (abholen)

Ist Inge's Kleid schon _____?

2. Professor Schulz' new book is important.
(---)

Professor Schulz' neues Buch ist _____.

3. Is the museum open [opened] on Sunday? (öffnen)

Ist das Museum sonntags _____?

4. The food in this restaurant is inviting.
(einladen)

Das Essen in diesem Restaurant ist _____.

5. Now the game is lost. (verlieren)

Jetzt ist das Spiel _____.

6. The homework is rather complicated. (---)

Die Hausaufgaben sind ziemlich _____.

7. The movie was excellent. (---)

Der Film war _____.

8. Is your new house already built? (bauen)

Ist euer neues Haus schon _____?

9. Are the letters written? (schreiben)

Sind die Briefe _____?

10. The game was exciting. (aufregen)

Das Spiel war _____.

11. These dresses are used. (gebrauchen)

Diese Kleider sind _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.
NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. abgeholt

_____ 2. bedeutend

_____ 3. geöffnet

_____ 4. einladend

_____ 5. verloren

_____ 6. kompliziert

_____ 7. ausgezeichnet

_____ 8. gebaut

_____ 9. geschrieben

_____ 10. aufregend

_____ 11. gebraucht

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate present or past participle, used as a predicate adjective.

1. Is the bicycle used? (gebrauchen)
Ist das Fahrrad?
2. The Müllers are also invited tonight. (einladen)
Müllers sind auch heute abend
3. Are these books ordered? (bestellen)
Sind diese Bücher?
4. The house is unfortunately sold. (verkaufen)
Das Haus ist leider
5. Professor Schulz' book is significant. (---)
Professor Schulz' Buch ist
6. His explanation is too complicated. (---)
Seine Erklärung ist zu
7. The German courses at this institute are excellent. (---)
Die Deutschkurse an diesem Institut sind
8. The bill is paid already. (bezahlen)
Die Rechnung ist schon
9. Are the letters already opened? (öffnen)
Sind die Briefe schon?
10. This restaurant is always closed on Sundays.
(schliessen)
Dieses Restaurant ist sonntags immer

Present and PastParticiples Used as Descriptive Adjectives

You have already learned to use present and past participles as adverbs and as predicate adjectives. In both cases, the form of the present or past participle was invariable. When present or past participles are used as descriptive adjectives, that is to say, when they precede the nouns to which they refer, they must take the same endings as any other descriptive adjective. These endings, which you learned in **Lessons 16** and 15, vary according to the gender, case, and number of the noun to which the adjective refers. In addition, some of the endings vary depending on whether the adjective is preceded by the definite article or another "der" word (**Lesson 15**) or by the indefinite article or another "kein" word (**Lesson 16**).

By way of review, you should carefully study the tables on the next page, which show the proper endings for descriptive adjectives following the definite article (by extension, of course, all "der/dieser" words) and "kein" words. The examples show the adjective endings for a present participle. The same endings, of course, are added to past participles when they are used as descriptive adjectives.

ENDINGS FOR ADJECTIVES FOLLOWING THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

(and, by extension, all "der/dieser" words)

Masculine

Feminine

Neuter

Singular

Nom.	der badende	die badende	das badende
Gen.	des badenden	der badenden	des badenden
Dat.	dem badenden	der badenden	dem badenden
Acc.	den badenden	die badende	das badende

Plural

All genders

Nom.	die badenden
Gen.	der badenden
Dat.	den badenden
Acc.	die badenden

ENDINGS FOR ADJECTIVES FOLLOWING "KEIN" WORDS

Singular

Nom.	kein badender	keine badende	kein badendes
Gen.	keines badenden	keiner badenden	keines badenden
Dat.	keinem badenden	keiner badenden	keinem badenden
Acc.	keinen badenden	keine badende	kein badendes

Plural

All genders

Nom.	keine badenden
Gen.	keiner badenden
Dat.	keinen badenden
Acc.	keine badenden

START THE TAPE.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate present or past participle. Be sure to use the proper adjective endings.

1. An important author is speaking tonight.
(---)

Ein _____ Autor spricht heute abend.

2. Here are the ordered books. (bestellen)

Hier sind die _____ Bücher.

3. The just-landed plane is being repaired. (landen)

Das gerade _____ Flugzeug wird repariert.

4. The soldiers are glad about the money they won.
(gewinnen)

Die Soldaten freuen sich über das _____ Geld.

5. The playing children are becoming hungry.
(spielen)

Die _____ Kinder werden hungrig.

6. The guests drank an excellent wine. (---)

Die Gäste tranken einen _____ Wein.

7. He jumped on the departing train. (abfahren)

Er sprang auf den _____ Zug.

8. His used cars are cheap. (gebrauchen)

Seine _____ Autos sind billig.

9. The officer greeted the invited students.
(einladen)

Der Offizier begrüßte die _____ Schüler.

10. The singing soldiers were sitting in the tavern.
(singen)

Die _____ Soldaten saßen in der Wirtschaft.

11. She has a winning manner. (gewinnen)

Sie hat eine _____ Art.

12. A trained mechanic can repair this car easily.
(lernen)

Ein _____ Mechaniker kann dieses Auto leicht reparieren.

13. The mother puts the sleeping child to bed.
(schlafen)

Die Mutter legt das _____ Kind ins Bett.

14. The working men must be tired. (arbeiten)

Die _____ Männer müssen müde sein.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. bedeutender

_____ 2. bestellten

_____ 3. gelandete

_____ 4. gewonnene

_____ 5. spielenden

_____ 6. ausgezeichneten

_____ 7. abfahrenden

_____ 8. gebrauchten

_____ 9. eingeladenen

_____ 10. singenden

_____ 11. gewinnende

_____ 12. gelernter

_____ 13. schlafende

_____ 14. arbeitenden

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate present participle or past participle. Be sure to use the proper adjective endings.

1. The sold sports car is being picked up at 9 o'clock. (verkaufen)

Der Sportwagen wird um neun Uhr abgeholt.

2. The lady coming in is our teacher. (eintreten)
Die Dame ist unsere Lehrerin.
3. The bought cake tastes better than Heidi's cake.
(kaufen)
Der Kuchen schmeckt besser als Heidis Kuchen.
4. The child is standing at an open window. (öffnen)
Das Kind steht an einem Fenster.
5. The returning soldiers want to eat. (zurückkommen)
Die Soldaten wollen essen.
6. Mrs. Müller calls her playing children. (spielen)
Frau Müller ruft ihre Kinder.
7. The waiter brought the drinking students one more
beer. (trinken)
Der Kellner brachte den Schülern noch ein
Bier.
8. I must finish writing this just-begun letter.
(beginnen)
Ich muss diesen gerade Brief fertig
schreiben.
9. The students don't understand the complicated
question. (---)
Die Schüler verstehen die Frage nicht.
10. Don't you like the returned book?
(zurückbringen)
Gefällt Ihnen das Buch nicht?

11. The waiter asks the reading man what he would
like to eat. (lesen)
Der Kellner fragt den Herrn, was er essen
möchte.
12. The traveling students are visiting Germany.
(reisen)
Die Schüler besuchen Deutschland.
13. Did you read the excellent book by Thomas Mann?
(---)
Hast du das Buch von Thomas Mann gelesen?
Translate the following English sentences into German,
paying particular attention to word order.

1. The soccer match was exciting. (aufregen)

2. Did you [formal] see the excellent movie?
(---)

_____ ?

3. Mr. Müller's house isn't built yet. (bauen)

4. Hans sat smoking on the sofa. (rauchen)

5. Did Inge return the borrowed books? (leihen)

?

6. Are you [familiar] also invited? (einladen)

?

7. Professor Schulz has written an important book.
(---)

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Das Fussballspiel war aufregend.

2. Haben Sie den ausgezeichneten Film gesehen?

3. Herrn Müllers Haus ist noch nicht gebaut.

4. Hans sass rauchend auf dem Sofa.

5. Hat Inge die geliehenen Bücher zurückgebracht?

6. Bist du auch eingeladen?

7. Professor Schulz hat ein bedeutendes Buch
geschrieben.

START THE TAPE.

Past Perfect Tense

In this lesson, you will learn to form and use the German past perfect tense. The past perfect tense of regular ("weak") and irregular ("mixed" and "strong") verbs, both those conjugated with haben and those conjugated with sein, will be presented in Section 1.

In Section 2, you will learn the past perfect tense of separable prefix verbs and verbs used reflexively.

Section 3 outlines the major contextual situations in which the past perfect tense is used and practices word order in past perfect sentences.

Past Perfect Tense

of Regular and Irregular Verbs

You are already familiar with the English "past perfect" tense which uses the past tense ("had") form of the auxiliary verb "to have," together with the past participle of the main verb. For example:

	AUX		PAST PART	
He	<u>had</u>	already	<u>left</u>	for school.

	AUX		PAST PART	
Mr. Meyer	<u>had</u>	often	<u>been</u>	to that restaurant.

	AUX		PAST PART	
	<u>Had</u>	they	<u>locked</u>	the car earlier?

A similar tense, also called the past perfect, exists in German. It is formed in a manner completely analogous to the German present perfect tense (Lessons 22 and 21), with the single exception that the auxiliary verb—either haben or sein, depending on the main verb in question—is in the imperfect tense rather than the present tense. Thus, your first task in learning the German past perfect will be to review the imperfect tense forms of haben and sein.

Listen to and repeat each of the past perfect tense sentences shown below, noticing especially the personal forms of the auxiliary verb:

HABEN

Ich hatte Deutsch gelernt.

(I had learned German.)

Du hattest Professor Schulz gedankt.

(You had thanked Professor Schulz.)

Er hatte immer viel geraucht.

(He had always smoked a lot.)

Wir hatten ihnen die Stadt gezeigt.

(We had shown them the town.)

Ihr hattet schwer gearbeitet.

(You had worked hard.)

Sie hatten die ganze Nacht getanzt.

(They had danced all night.)

Sie hatten nicht daran gedacht.

(You hadn't thought of that.)

SEIN

Ich war gestern zu Hause geblieben.

(I had stayed home yesterday.)

Du warst schon nach München gefahren.

(You had already gone to Munich.)

Er war lange krank gewesen.

(He had been sick for a long time.)

Wir waren schon nach Hause gegangen.

(We had already gone home.)

Ihr wart zu spät gekommen.

(You had come too late.)

Sie waren nach Deutschland geflogen.

(They had flown to Germany.)

Waren Sie die ganze Woche in San Francisco gewesen?

(Had you been in San Francisco all week?)

Study thoroughly the above (imperfect) forms of haben and sein, then turn the page for exercises.

START THE TAPE.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of haben to produce a complete German sentence in the past perfect tense.

1. Er _____ keine Zeit gehabt.
(He hadn't had any time.)
2. Sie _____ lange nichts von ihm gehört.
(They hadn't heard from him in a long time.)
3. Wir _____ Inge im Urlaub getroffen.
(We had met Inge during the vacation.)
4. Ich _____ Professor Schulz für das Buch gedankt.
(I had thanked Professor Schulz for the book.)
5. _____ du ihm nichts davon gesagt?
(Hadn't you told him about that?)
6. _____ Sie den warmen Mantel nicht gebraucht?
(Hadn't you needed the warm coat?)
7. _____ ihr schon gegessen?
(Had you already eaten?)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate form of haben, to produce a complete German sentence in the past perfect tense.

1. Frau Müller uns nicht geglaubt.
(Mrs. Müller hadn't believed us.)
2. ihr mit Professor Schulz darüber gesprochen?
(Had you spoken to Professor Schulz about that?)
3. Ich mein Auto neben dem Kino geparkt.
(I had parked my car next to the movie theater.)
4. du ihn in der Stadt gesehen?
(Had you seen him downtown?)
5. Sie in der Schule Deutsch und Englisch gelernt.
(They had learned German and English in school.)
6. Wir ihnen die ganze Stadt gezeigt.
(We had shown them the entire town.)
7. Sie nichts davon gewusst?
(Hadn't you known anything about that?)

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

_____ 1. hatte

_____ 2. hatten

_____ 3. hatten

_____ 4. hatte

_____ 5. Hattest

_____ 6. Hatten

_____ 7. Hattet

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of sein to produce a complete German sentence in the past perfect tense. Note that most "sein" verbs, whose past participles appear in these sentences, are verbs that denote motion (e.g. fahren, kommen) or a change in condition (e.g., werden), as previously discussed in Lesson 22. Please remember also that sein and bleiben are conjugated with sein. All "sein" verbs are intransitive, that is to say, they cannot have a direct object.

1. Warum _____ Sie nicht früher gekommen?
(Why hadn't you come earlier?)
2. Ich _____ gestern abend früh ins Bett gegangen.
(I had gone to bed early last night.)
3. Paul _____ Arzt geworden.
(Paul had become a doctor.)
4. Wir _____ jeden Morgen durch den Park gelaufen.
(We had run through the park every morning.)
5. Sie _____ durch ganz Europa gereist.
(They had traveled through all of Europe.)
6. _____ ihr lange in Deutschland geblieben?
(Had you stayed in Germany for a long time?)
7. _____ du damals schon Lehrer gewesen?
(Had you been a teacher then?)

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate form of sein, to produce German sentences in the past perfect tense.

1. Die Kinder durch den Park gelaufen.
(The children had run through the park.)
2. Wir gestern abend nicht ins Kino gegangen.
(We hadn't gone to the movies last night.)
3. Warum Sie nicht in München geblieben?
(Why hadn't you stayed in Munich?)
4. Er schnell alt geworden.
(He had aged quickly.)
5. Wann du nach Hause gekommen?
(When had you come home?)
6. Sie auch in Afrika gewesen?
(Had you also been in Africa?)
7. Ich zu Fuss gegangen.
(I had gone on foot.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

In the following exercises, you will be asked to supply both the proper form of the auxiliary verb (haben or sein) and the past participle, in forming complete past perfect tense sentences. The verbs to be used are shown below. Listen to and repeat both the infinitive and the past participle form. Since both "haben" verbs and "sein" verbs will at this point be combined, you should also remember which auxiliary is used in each case.

"HABEN" VERBS

<u>Infinitive</u>		<u>Past Participle</u>
benutzen	(use)	benutzt
besuchen	(visit)	besucht
danken	(thank)	gedankt
dauern	(last)	gedauert
glauben	(believe)	geglaubt
haben	(have)	gehabt
holen	(get, pick up)	geholt
kaufen	(buy)	gekauft
legen	(lay, put)	gelegt
lesen	(read)	gelesen
machen	(do)	gemacht
parken	(park)	geparkt
rauchen	(smoke)	geraucht
regnen	(rain)	geregnet
schreiben	(write)	geschrieben
spielen	(play)	gespielt
verkaufen	(sell)	verkauft
versäumen	(miss)	versäumt

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. waren
- _____ 2. war
- _____ 3. war
- _____ 4. waren
- _____ 5. waren
- _____ 6. wart
- _____ 7. warst

wohnen	(live, reside)	gewohnt
zeigen	(show)	gezeigt
bringen	(bring, take)	gebracht
essen	(eat)	gegessen
kennen	(know)	gekant
sehen	(see)	gesehen
sprechen	(speak, talk)	gesprochen
stehen	(stand)	gestanden
verbringen	(spend [time])	verbracht
verlieren	(lose)	verloren
versäumen	(miss)	versäumt
verstehen	(understand)	verstanden
wissen	(know)	gewusst

"SEIN" VERBS

bleiben	(stay)	geblieben
fahren	(drive, go)	gefahren
fliegen	(fly)	geflogen
gehen	(go)	gegangen
kommen	(come)	gekommen
laufen	(run)	gelaufen
reisen	(travel)	gereist
sein	(be)	gewesen
wachsen	(grow)	gewachsen
werden	(become)	geworden

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate past perfect form of the verb shown in parentheses. Note that both "haben" verbs and "sein" verbs are used.

1. Father had always smoked strong cigars. (rauchen)

Vater _____ immer starke Zigarren _____.

2. When had you gone to Berlin? (fahren)

Wann _____ Sie nach Berlin _____?

3. Inge had become a teacher. (werden)

Inge _____ Lehrerin _____.

4. Hadn't you known that? (wissen)

_____ du das nicht _____?

5. He had gotten his best bottle of wine from the cellar. (holen)

Er _____ seine beste Flasche Wein aus dem Keller _____.

6. Before Lindbergh, no one had flown from America to Europe. (fliegen)

Vor Lindbergh _____ niemand von Amerika nach Europa _____.

7. I hadn't seen my friends in a long time. (sehen)

Ich _____ meine Freunde lange nicht _____.

8. They had come to this country many years ago. (kommen)

Sie _____ vor vielen Jahren in dieses Land _____.

9. My plants had grown enormously. (wachsen)

Meine Pflanzen _____ enorm _____.

10. They simply hadn't believed him. (glauben)

Sie _____ ihm einfach nicht _____.

11. Had you known him at that time already? (kennen)

_____ ihr ihn damals schon _____?

12. Peter had gone to Germany twice. (fahren)

Peter _____ zweimal nach Deutschland _____.

13. Our car had stood in the garage for three weeks. (stehen)

Unser Auto _____ drei Wochen in der Garage _____.

14. We had already traveled through seven countries. (reisen)

Wir _____ schon durch sieben Länder _____.

15. We had eaten nothing all day. (essen)
Wir _____ den ganzen Tag nichts _____.

16. Why had he stayed home all week? (bleiben)
Warum _____ er die ganze Woche zu Hause
_____?

17. About what had they spoken? (sprechen)
Worüber _____ sie _____?

18. Mr. Müller had always been friendly. (sein)
Herr Müller _____ immer freundlich
_____.

19. Peter had never had any good friends. (haben)
Peter _____ nie gute Freunde _____.

20. In his earlier years, he had been very poor.
(sein)
Früher _____ er sehr arm _____.

21. Why hadn't Peter gone to get his textbooks?
(holen)
Warum _____ Peter seine Lehrbücher nicht
_____?

22. She had read it in the newspaper. (lesen)
Sie _____ es in der Zeitung _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. hatte geraucht

_____ 2. waren gefahren

_____ 3. war geworden

_____ 4. Hattest gewusst

_____ 5. hatte geholt

_____ 6. war geflogen

_____ 7. hatte gesehen

_____ 8. waren gekommen

_____ 9. waren gewachsen

_____ 10. hatten geglaubt

_____ 11. Hattet gekannt

_____ 12. war gefahren

_____ 13. hatte gestanden

_____ 14. waren gereist

_____ 15. hatten gegessen

_____ 16. war geblieben

_____ 17. hatten gesprochen

_____ 18. war gewesen

_____ 19. hatte gehabt

_____ 20. war gewesen

_____ 21. hatte geholt

_____ 22. hatte gelesen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate past perfect form of the verb shown in parentheses. Both "haben" verbs and "sein" verbs are used.

1. Why hadn't you shown them the apartment earlier?
(zeigen)

Warum du ihnen die Wohnung nicht früher?

2. Hans had become a teacher. (werden)

Hans Lehrer

3. Mr. Meyer had always been my friend. (sein)

Herr Meyer immer mein Freund

4. Inge hadn't thanked us for the present. (danken)

Inge uns nicht für das Geschenk

5. Professor Schulz had come without his wife.
(kommen)

Professor Schulz ohne seine Frau

6. The fastest plane had flown to Germany in
three hours. (fliegen)

Das schnellste Flugzeug in drei Stunden
nach Deutschland

7. Mrs. Müller had just put her children to bed.
(bringen)

Frau Müller gerade ihre Kinder ins Bett

8. The Meyers had never gone to Berlin. (fahren)

Meyers nie nach Berlin

9. Both movies had lasted too long. (dauern)

Beide Filme zu lange

10. Why hadn't you stayed in Florida? (bleiben)

Warum ihr nicht in Florida?

11. They had never gone on vacation without their children. (fahren)

Sie nie ohne ihre Kinder in Urlaub

12. Before then, we hadn't known him very well. (kennen)

Vorher wir ihn nicht gut

13. Had you really gone through the entire museum in two hours? (gehen)

.... du wirklich in zwei Stunden durch das ganze Museum?

14. She had made us something to eat. (machen)

Sie uns etwas zu essen

15. Before his illness, Mr. Meyer had walked to the park every day. (gehen)

Vor seiner Krankheit Herr Meyer jeden Tag in den Park

16. My hair had grown a lot in one month. (wachsen)

Mein Haar in einem Monat sehr

17. Had you taken your friend to the train? (bringen)

.... Sie Ihren Freund zum Bahnhof?

18. They hadn't seen him. (sehen)

Sie ihn nicht

NOTES

Section 2

Past Perfect Tense

of Separable Prefix Verbs and Reflexive Constructions

Separable prefix verbs pose no special problem in the past perfect tense, if you remember that the ge- element used in the past participle is placed between the separable prefix and the main part of the verb. For example, the past participle of the separable prefix verb aufmachen is aufgemacht, NOT *geaufmacht, as the pattern for verbs without separable prefixes might lead you to expect.

On this basis, what is the past participle of the separable prefix verb mitbringen?

The past participle of mitbringen is mitgebracht.

The following separable prefix verbs (which you studied previously in **Lesson 22**) will be used in the exercises to follow. Listen to and repeat both the infinitive and past participle forms, noting especially the position of the -ge- element.

abholen	(pick up)	abgeholt
aufmachen	(open up)	aufgemacht
mitbringen	(bring along)	mitgebracht
einladen	(invite)	eingeladen
aufschreiben	(write down)	aufgeschrieben
hergeben	(hand over)	hergegeben
mitnehmen	(take along)	mitgenommen

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate past perfect tense form of the separable prefix verbs shown in parentheses.

- Hans had opened the door. (aufmachen)
Hans _____ die Tür _____.
 - We had just picked them up from the train station. (abholen)
Wir _____ sie gerade vom Bahnhof _____.
 - Inge hadn't liked to hand over the money. (hergeben)
Inge _____ das Geld nicht gern _____.
 - Had you taken the children along? (mitnehmen)
_____ ihr die Kinder _____.
 - On Saturday I had invited a few friends for dinner. (einladen)
Am Sonnabend _____ ich einige Freunde zum Essen _____.
 - He had brought along a good bottle of wine. (mitbringen)
Er _____ eine gute Flasche Wein _____.
 - Maria had already written down the address. (aufschreiben)
Maria _____ die Adresse schon _____.
- _____ TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. hatte aufgemacht

_____ 2. hatten abgeholt

_____ 3. hatte hergegeben

_____ 4. Hattet mitgenommen

_____ 5. hatte eingeladen

_____ 6. hatte mitgebracht

_____ 7. hatte aufgeschrieben

START THE TAPE.

From **Lesson 22**, you will remember that the word order for reflexive constructions in the present perfect tense is as follows:

Er	hat	sich	ein Auto	gekauft.
	↑	↑		↑
	auxiliary	reflexive		past
	verb	pronoun		participle

As seen above, the proper reflexive pronoun immediately follows the auxiliary verb, except for interrogative sentences, in which the subject of the sentence and the auxiliary verb are inverted:

Hat er sich ein Auto gekauft?

The same word order applies to reflexive constructions in the past perfect tense:

Er	hatte	sich	ein Auto	gekauft.
	↑	↑		↑
	auxiliary	reflexive		past
	verb	pronoun		participle
	(in imperfect tense)			

or, for interrogative sentences:

Hatte er sich ein Auto gekauft?

The following verbs will be used to practice reflexive constructions in the past perfect tense. Listen to and repeat both the infinitive and past participle.

sich amüsieren (amuse oneself, to have fun)	sich amüsiert ²
sich (etwas) aufschreiben ¹ (write something down)	sich (etwas) aufgeschrieben
sich (etwas) ansehen ¹ (look at something)	sich (etwas) angesehen
sich (etwas) anziehen ¹ (put on something)	sich (etwas) angezogen
sich interessieren [für] (be interested)	sich interessiert ²
sich kaufen (buy for oneself)	sich gekauft
sich machen (make for oneself)	sich gemacht
sich unterhalten (converse)	sich unterhalten ²

¹NOTE: These are also separable prefix verbs.

²NOTE: You do remember from Lesson 22 that -ieren verbs and verbs with nonseparable [i.e., unstressed] prefixes do not use the -ge- element in forming the past participle.

Fill in the blanks to form a complete sentence in the past perfect tense, using the verbs shown in parentheses. Be sure to supply the appropriate reflexive pronoun as well as the verb form itself.

- I had never been interested in soccer before.
(sich interessieren)
Ich _____ bisher nie für Fußball _____.
- They had had a lot of fun. (sich amüsieren)
Sie _____ gut _____.
- Inge had made her dresses herself. (sich machen)
Inge _____ ihre Kleider selbst _____.
- The children had just put on their coats.
(sich anziehen)
Die Kinder _____ gerade die Mäntel _____.
- Had you looked at all the pictures in the museum?
(sich ansehen)
_____ ihr _____ alle Bilder
in Museum _____?
- We had just bought ourselves a beautiful house.
(sich kaufen)
Wir _____ gerade ein schönes Haus
_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Section 3

Some Considerations

in the Use of the Past Perfect Tense

In narrative writing or speech, the German imperfect tense or present perfect tense is used to relate events that took place in the past. Generally speaking, the imperfect is more common to the written language and the present perfect is more often used in the spoken language. However, in both speech and writing, it is occasionally necessary to refer to some past event which took place at an even earlier time than the past time of the narration itself. The past perfect tense is used to "reach back" to the earlier event. For example, read the following passage which combines both a narration in the imperfect and references to even earlier events which are expressed in the past perfect.

For easier understanding of the narration, here are the key verbs you are not yet familiar with:

schneien (to snow); rodeln (to go sledding);
kochen (to cook):

Als Fritz heute morgen aus dem Fenster sah, bemerkte er, dass es in der Nacht geschneit hatte. Er holte schnell seinen Schlitten und ging rodeln. Er blieb den ganzen Morgen draussen und als er um zwölf Uhr nach Hause kam, hatte seine Mutter schon das Mittagessen gekocht. Fritz war sehr hungrig, weil er den ganzen Morgen in der frischen Luft gewesen war. Er ass drei Teller Suppe und ging wieder rodeln.

When Fritz looked out of the window this morning, he noticed that it had snowed during the night. He quickly took his sled and went sledding. He stayed outside all morning and when he came home at noon, his mother had already made lunch. Fritz was very hungry, because he had been in the fresh air all morning. He ate three bowls of soup and went sledding again.

The past perfect tense is also commonly used in sentences of two or more clauses, whenever one clause describes a past event which reaches yet farther back in time than the event in another clause. In this case the "earlier-event clause" is in the past perfect and the other one in the imperfect. For example:

PAST PERFECT

IMPERFECT

1. Ich hatte gerade gegessen, als das Telefon klingelte.
(I had just eaten when the telephone rang.)
2. Mein Freund hat mich besucht, nachdem ich ihn eingeladen hatte.
(My friend has visited me after I had invited him.)
or: (My friend visited me after I had invited him.)
3. Obwohl es eine Woche lang geregnet hatte, war kein Wasser in unserem Keller.
(Although it had rained for a week, there was no water in our basement.)

When the past perfect tense is used in a subordinate clause (as in the last two examples), the conjugated auxiliary verb is transposed to the end of the clause immediately following the past participle. You are already familiar with the principle of transposed word order from your study of **Lesson 23**. The subject and verb in the main clause of the second example (war kein Wasser in unserem Keller) are inverted because the main clause is preceded by another element, in this case, the subordinate clause itself. You

have already seen this subject-verb inversion in main clauses preceded by an adverb of time, a prepositional phrase, or some other element, as in:

Regular order: Hans war diesen Sonntag müde.
(Hans was tired this Sunday.)

Inverted order: Diesen Sonntag war Hans müde.
(This Sunday Hans was tired.)

If the main clause begins the sentence (i.e., if there is no preceding subordinate clause), normal word order is observed in the main clause:

Kein Wasser war in unserem Keller, obwohl es eine Woche lang geregnet hatte.

In summary:

- 1) SUBORDINATE CLAUSE: Transposed word order (conjugated verb at end of clause) is used in all subordinate clauses using the past perfect tense.
- 2) MAIN CLAUSE: Inverted word order (subject and verb exchange position) is used in the main clause if the subordinate clause precedes it. If the main clause comes first, there is no inversion.

The following exercises use the past perfect tense in both main clauses and subordinate clauses, and review the verbs practiced in the first two sections, including separable prefixes and reflexive constructions. In addition to working with fill-in and spoken completion exercises, you will be asked to write and say complete German sentences requiring knowledge of the proper word order.

Fill in the blanks with the past perfect tense form of the verb shown in parentheses. Note that both "haben" verbs and "sein" verbs are used, as well as separable prefix verbs and reflexive constructions.

1. After Mr. Miller had sold his house, he drove to Florida. (verkaufen)

Nachdem Herr Müller sein Haus _____,
fuhr er nach Florida.

2. After they had traveled through Europe, they flew home. (reisen)

Nachdem sie durch Europa _____,
flogen sie nach Hause.

3. My friend had lived in Munich for a long time, before he went to Berlin. (wohnen)

Mein Freund _____ lange in München _____,
bevor er nach Berlin ging.

4. They asked us where we had parked the car. (parken)

Sie fragten uns, wo wir das Auto _____.

5. When we arrived at Peter's, Karl had already picked him up. (abholen)

Als wir bei Peter ankamen, _____ Karl ihn
schon _____.

6. After Paul had written down the telephone number, he immediately made a call. (sich aufschreiben)

Nachdem Paul _____ die Telefonnummer _____, rief er sofort an.

7. The mother was angry with her children because they had played in Mr. Müller's garden. (spielen)

Die Mutter war böse auf ihre Kinder, weil sie in Herrn Müllers Garten _____.

8. After it had rained all week we went home. (regnen)

Nachdem es die ganze Woche _____, fuhren wir nach Hause.

9. Inge didn't visit us although we had invited her. (einladen)

Inge hat uns nicht besucht, obwohl wir sie _____.

10. Karl visited his friend whom he hadn't seen in a long time. (sehen)

Karl besuchte seinen Freund, den er lange nicht _____.

11. When we arrived, he had already gone to Cologne. (abfahren)

Als wir ankamen, _____ er schon nach Köln _____.

12. Although the Meyers had enjoyed themselves at the last Oktoberfest, they didn't go this year. (sich amüsieren)

Obwohl Meyers _____ auf dem letzten Oktoberfest gut _____, gingen sie dieses Jahr nicht hin.

13. Peter didn't want to tell me with whom he had conversed so long on the telephone. (sich unterhalten)

Peter wollte mir nicht sagen, mit wem er sich so lange am Telefon _____.

14. Because they hadn't been in Germany for several years, they wanted to go there once again. (sein)

Da sie mehrere Jahre nicht in Deutschland _____, wollten sie wieder einmal hinfahren.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. verkauft hatte

_____ 2. gereist waren

_____ 3. hatte gewohnt

_____ 4. geparkt hatten

_____ 5. hatte abgeholt

_____ 6. sich aufgeschrieben
hatte

_____ 7. gespielt hatten

_____ 8. geregnet hatte

_____ 9. eingeladen hatten

_____ 10. gesehen hatte

_____ 11. war abgefahren.

_____ 12. sich amüsiert
hatten

_____ 13. unterhalten hatte

_____ 14. gewesen waren

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate past perfect tense form of the verb in parentheses.

1. After we had lost our suitcases we went to the police. (verlieren)
Nachdem wir unsere Koffer, gingen wir zur Polizei.
2. After we had put on our bathing suits we went into the water. (sich anziehen)
Nachdem wir die Badeanzüge, gingen wir ins Wasser.
3. After the children had played in the garden they were very hungry. (spielen)
Nachdem die Kinder im Garten, waren sie sehr hungrig.
4. Since I hadn't understood the teacher, I went to see him after class. (verstehen)
Da ich den Lehrer nicht, ging ich nach dem Unterricht zu ihm.
5. Although Mr. Meyer had been sick for some time, he started smoking again. (sein)
Obwohl Herr Meyer lange Zeit krank, fing er wieder an zu rauchen.
6. Because I had stayed so long at the Müllers I had no time left for other visits. (bleiben)
Da ich so lange bei Müllers, hatte ich keine Zeit mehr für andere Besuche.

7. After he had read the book he put it on the table. (lesen)
Nachdem er das Buch, legte er es auf den Tisch.
8. After they had bought a house in Munich they visited us. (sich kaufen)
Nachdem sie in München ein Haus, besuchten sie uns.
9. We were glad that Peter had brought his friend along. (mitbringen)
Wir waren froh, dass Peter seinen Freund
10. You didn't tell us why you hadn't written in such a long time. (schreiben)
Ihr habt uns nicht gesagt, warum ihr so lange nicht
11. After Hans and Inge had ask about the prices of the new cars, they bought a used one. (fragen)
Nachdem Hans und Inge nach den Preisen der neuen Autos, kauften sie sich ein gebrauchtes.
12. He was not in his office because he had flown to Germany. (fliegen)
Er war nicht in seinem Büro, weil er nach Deutschland
13. We spent our vacation in Italy because it had gotten cold in Germany. (werden)
Wir haben unsere Ferien in Italien verbracht, weil es in Deutschland kalt

NOTES

Write complete German sentences on the basis of the given English. Most of the German words you will need are shown, but you will have to determine the proper word order as well as the proper forms and endings, in order to make a complete, grammatically correct sentence.

1. Mr. Müller showed us the photos which he had taken during his trip.

zeigen / Aufnahmen / machen / auf / seine Reise

2. Although we had never been interested in soccer, we enjoyed the game.

obwohl / sich interessieren für / nie / Fussball / Spiel / gefallen

3. After the teacher had gone out of the class, the students began to converse.

nachdem / Lehrer / gehen / aus / Klasse / Schüler
beginnen / zu / sich unterhalten

4. Although Fritz had opened the windows, it was still too warm.

obwohl / Fenster / aufmachen / sein / zu warm /
immer noch

5. After we had eaten, we ordered a bottle of wine.

nachdem / essen / bestellen / Flasche / Wein

6. After he had returned from Germany, he liked to drink beer.

nachdem / zurückkommen / Deutschland / trinken /
gern / Bier

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Herr Müller zeigte uns die Aufnahmen, die er auf seiner Reise gemacht hatte.

2. Obwohl wir uns nie für Fussball interessiert hatten, gefiel uns das Spiel.

3. Nachdem der Lehrer aus der Klasse gegangen war, begannen die Schüler sich zu unterhalten.

4. Obwohl Fritz die Fenster aufgemacht hatte, war es immer noch zu warm.

5. Nachdem wir gegessen hatten, bestellten wir eine Flasche Wein.

6. Nachdem er aus Deutschland zurückgekommen war, trank er gern Bier.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English. Most of the words you will need are provided, but you must add proper endings and in some cases rearrange the words for proper word order.

1. Because we had missed the bus, we took a taxi.
weil / versäumen / Omnibus / nehmen / Taxi
2. After Hans had driven his car against a wall, he gave up driving.
nachdem / fahren / mit seinem Wagen / gegen / Mauer / aufgeben / Autofahren
3. Although they had never been in Munich, they only stayed one day.
obwohl / München / sein / nie / bleiben / nur / ein Tag
4. When Inge came home, we had already eaten.
Als / kommen / nach Hause / schon / essen
5. Although Mrs. Müller had eaten well, she was still hungry.
obwohl / gut essen / sein / immer noch / hungrig
6. After Professor Schulz had written the letter, he brought it to the post office.
nachdem / schreiben / Brief / bringen / zur Post

LESSON 35

The Present Tense with Future MeaningFuture Tense

In this **Lesson**, you will learn to form and use the German future tense, in both the active and passive voice. In addition, you will learn to use the present tense to convey a future meaning in certain contexts. The **Lesson** is divided into the following sections:

1. The Present Tense with Future Meaning
2. Formation and Use of the Future Tense
3. Future Tense Expressing Present Probability
4. Future Tense in the Passive Voice

In English, there are a number of ways to express 'future time.' The speaker or writer could use the simple future tense:

I shall (will) visit Munich next year.

or a form known as the future progressive:

I am going to visit Munich next year.

In addition, the English present progressive tense can often be used with a future meaning, especially in colloquial speech:

I am seeing my friend this weekend.

In German, there are two ways to express future time. One is to use the future tense verb forms which will be introduced in section 2 of this **Lesson**, and the other is to use present tense verb forms in situations where a reference to the future is obvious.

For example, consider the two sentences below:

1. Peter spielt Fussball.

(Peter plays soccer.)

or: Peter is playing soccer.)

2. Peter spielt morgen Fussball.

(Peter is playing soccer tomorrow.)

or: Peter will play soccer tomorrow.)

In what grammatical tense are the verbs in these two German sentences?

They are both in the present tense. However, sentence 2 has a future force. Can you say why? The word morgen (an adverb of time) appears in sentence 2, which indicates to the listener or reader that a future time is being referred to even though the verb itself is in the present tense.

Expressions such as morgen, übermorgen (day after tomorrow), nächste Woche (next week), im Sommer (in the summer), days of the week [yet to come] or any other references to a future time or event permit the use of the present tense with future meaning.

Listen to and repeat the German sentences below, noticing in each case:

- 1) the present tense verb form;
 - 2) the time expression indicating future meaning;
- and
- 3) the English translations, which can be (more or less interchangeably) the English present tense, present progressive, future, or future progressive.

1. Hans fliegt nächste Woche nach Kalifornien.
(Hans is flying to California next week.)
2. Fährst du morgen in die Stadt?
(Are you driving downtown tomorrow?)
3. Seid ihr am Sonntag wieder zurück?
(Will you be back Sunday?)
4. Das Flugzeug aus München landet in zehn Minuten.
(The plane from Munich will land in ten minutes.)
5. Dieses Jahr fahren wir wieder nach Deutschland.
(We are going to Germany again this year.)

6. Ich sehe mir heute nachmittag den neuen Film an.
(I am going to see the new movie this afternoon.)
7. Ich rufe dich nachher an.
(I'll call you later.)
8. Übermorgen fahren wir in Urlaub.
(The day after tomorrow we will go on vacation.)
9. Dieses Wochenende zeigt Professor Schulz uns die Stadt.
(This weekend, Professor Schulz is going to show us the town.)
10. Bleibt Ingrid morgen abend zu Hause?
(Will Ingrid be staying home tomorrow night?)

NOTES

Write complete German sentences, using the appropriate present tense form of the verb in parentheses to indicate future time. In some cases, you must also provide the appropriate subject or reflexive pronoun. Remember that when a time expression (or some other element) begins the sentence, the subject and verb are inverted.

1. Next week I am flying to New York. (fliegen)
Nächste Woche _____ nach New York.
2. They are going to pick up the tickets on Monday.
(abholen)
_____ die Karten am Montag _____.
3. This summer we are going to Germany. (fahren)
Diesen Sommer _____ nach Deutschland.
4. Is he coming later? (kommen)
_____ später?
5. Next month he is going to visit his friends in Stuttgart. (besuchen)
Nächsten Monat _____ seine Freunde in Stuttgart.
6. The Meyers will return from their trip tomorrow.
(kommen)
Meyers _____ morgen von ihrer Reise zurück.

7. Are you [fam. sg.] going to stay home next weekend?
(bleiben)

_____ nächstes Wochenende zu Hause?

8. The day after tomorrow, Professor Schulz will show us the town. (zeigen)
Übermorgen _____ uns Professor Schulz die Stadt.
9. Is Hans going to buy himself a sports car soon?
(sich kaufen)
_____ Hans _____ bald einen Sportwagen?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 8. zeigt

_____ 9. Kauft sich

START THE TAPE.

_____ 1. fliege ich

_____ 2. Sie holen ab

_____ 3. fahren wir

_____ 4. Kommt er

_____ 5. besucht er

_____ 6. kommen

_____ 7. Bleibst du

Occasionally, previous context, rather than the presence of a "future expression" within the sentence, gives a future force to a present tense sentence. For example, if a conversation has revolved around "plans for the coming vacation," one of the speakers could say Ich fahre nach Italien with the implied meaning "I will go to Italy [during the coming vacation]."

The following exercise is based on the use of the present tense with a future meaning derived from previous context rather than indicated by adverbs or time expressions within the sentence itself.

Listen to a short question spoken on tape, then answer the question using the words provided. For example:

You see and hear: Was machst du heute abend?

You see: gehen / ins Kino

You say: "Ich gehe ins Kino."

1. Wohin fährst du nächstes Jahr?
fahren / Italien
2. Bleibt ihr morgen abend zu Hause?
nein / wir / ausgehen
3. Was machen Sie am Sonntag? (plur.)
gehen / zum Fussballspiel
4. Kommt Herr Müller übermorgen zurück?
nein / bleiben / noch / in Berlin
5. Hast du später Zeit?
ja / haben / Zeit

6. Was machen Sie heute abend? (sing.)
ausgehen / mit Inge

7. Wer kommt morgen abend?
Peter / Inge / kommen

8. Geht ihr am Sonntag tanzen?
nein / haben / Zeit / keine

Formation and Use of the Future Tense

As discussed in the preceding section, the present tense can often be used with future meaning, either in situations where the future meaning is clear from context or with sentences containing an expression referring to future time. The "future" use of the present tense is especially common in speech, although it is of course possible to use it in writing, for example, in letters to friends.

The "real" German future tense, which you will learn in this section, is used primarily in formal writing. However, it is also used in rather formal speech (as in giving a lecture), or when the speaker wishes to place particular emphasis on his statement. For example:

I will be sure to give him the book.

would probably be conveyed in German with the regular future tense:

Ich werde ihm (bestimmt) das Buch geben.

By examining the following pairs of sentences, you should be able to deduce the way in which the German future tense is formed. Listen to and repeat each of the sentences below, then stop your tape and study them until you have learned the principle involved.

1. (present) Herr Meyer fährt nach Berlin.
(future) Herr Meyer wird nach Berlin fahren.
(Mr. Meyer will go to Berlin.)

2. (present) Wir nehmen die Kinder mit.
(future) Wir werden die Kinder mitnehmen.
(We will take the children along.)
3. (present) Professor Schulz kauft sich ein Haus in Köln.
(future) Professor Schulz wird sich ein Haus in Köln kaufen.
(Professor Schulz will buy himself a house in Cologne.)
4. (present) Bleibt ihr lange in Deutschland?
(future) Werdet ihr lange in Deutschland bleiben?
(Will you be staying long in Germany?)

START THE TAPE.

Write your answers to the following short written quiz.

1. What form does the main verb have in future tense sentences?

2. Where is the main verb placed?

3. What auxiliary verb is used?

4. In what tense is the auxiliary verb?

5. Is the auxiliary verb inflected (conjugated)?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

The following exercise will refresh your memory of the present tense forms of werden. Listen to and repeat each sentence, noticing the underlined verb form. In addition, you will observe that the main verb is always at the end of the sentence, in its infinitive form.

1. Hans wird uns anrufen.

(Hans will call us.)

2. Werden Sie Zeit haben?

(Will you have time?)

3. Wirst du uns besuchen?

(Will you visit us?)

4. Wir werden uns heute abend mit ihnen treffen.

(We will meet them tonight.)

5. Werdet ihr ihnen danken?

(Will you thank them?)

6. Wird sie auch kommen?

(Will she also come?)

7. Sie werden uns bald schreiben.

(They will write us soon.)

8. Ich werde morgen ausgehen.

(I will be going out tomorrow.)

Study the above forms more thoroughly if required.

Say a complete German sentence, supplying the appropriate form of werden to produce the future tense.

1. Will he visit you?
.... er euch besuchen?
2. How long will you stay in Germany?
Wie lange Sie in Deutschland bleiben?
3. We will first land in Frankfurt.
Wir zuerst in Frankfurt landen.
4. I will wait for you.
Ich auf dich warten.
5. When will we see each other again?
Wann wir uns wiedersehen?
6. I will meet him tomorrow.
Ich mich morgen mit ihm treffen.
7. Hans is going to introduce you to the lady.
Hans euch der Dame vorstellen.
8. We will write them soon.
Wir ihnen bald schreiben.
9. Will you find your way around Berlin.
.... du dich in Berlin zurechtfinden?
10. Karl und Inge will study in America next year.
Karl und Inge nächstes Jahr in Amerika studieren.

The correct answers are:

1. In future tense sentences, the main verb is in the infinitive form.
2. The main verb, in the infinitive form, is placed at the end of the main clause.
(In simple sentences, there is of course only the single main clause, and the infinitive thus comes at the end of the sentence. When the future tense is used in a subordinate clause, a different word order applies, to be discussed later.)
3. werden
4. present tense
5. Yes, the auxiliary verb uses the appropriate tense endings in agreement with the grammatical subject.

Fill in the appropriate form of the auxiliary verb to produce a complete German sentence in the future tense.

1. I'll bring the children along.

Ich _____ die Kinder mitbringen.

2. The performance will last a long time.

Die Vorstellung _____ lange dauern.

3. We will stay several days.

Wir _____ mehrere Tage bleiben.

4. Will you be back soon?

_____ du bald zurück sein?

5. Franz will study medicine.

Franz _____ Medizin studieren.

6. My parents will visit us in the summer.

Meine Eltern _____ uns im Sommer besuchen.

7. Will you invite Hans and Inge?

_____ ihr Hans und Inge einladen?

8. Will you go to Germany again this year?

_____ Sie dieses Jahr wieder nach Deutschland fahren?

START THE TAPE.

As you will remember from **Lesson 28**, the present tense of the passive voice is also formed with the auxiliary werden. Indeed, both the present tense passive and the future tense active use the present tense of werden as the inflected verb and in addition place the main verb at the end of the sentence or clause. How, then, can the present tense passive and the future tense active be distinguished from one another?

In the present tense passive, the past participle of the main verb is used. In the future tense active, the infinitive of the main verb is used.

PRESENT TENSE PASSIVE: Morgen wird das Dach repariert.

FUTURE ACTIVE: Morgen wird er das Dach reparieren.

Listen to and repeat the following sentence pairs. The a portion is a Present Tense Passive construction, and the b portion is a Future Tense Active construction.

1.

- a. Heute abend wird sein Reisefilm gezeigt.
b. Heute abend wird er seinen Reisefilm zeigen.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

2.

- a. Das Bild wird über dem Sofa aufgehängt.
- b. Er wird das Bild über dem Sofa aufhängen.

3.

- a. Das Kind wird besonders hübsch angezogen.
- b. Die Mutter wird das Kind besonders hübsch anziehen.

4.

- a. Auf der Party wird guter Wein getrunken.
- b. Auf der Party wird sie guten Wein trinken.

5.

- a. Das Auto wird heute noch abgeschmiert.
- b. Er wird das Auto heute noch abschmieren.

6.

- a. Jetzt wird eine Pause gemacht.
- b. Er wird jetzt eine Pause machen.

7.

- a. In dieser Stadt werden viele neue Häuser gebaut.
- b. Sie werden in dieser Stadt viele neue Häuser bauen.

8.

- a. Die Schüler werden am Freitag geprüft.
- b. Der Lehrer wird die Schüler am Freitag prüfen.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. werde

_____ 2. wird

_____ 3. werden

_____ 4. wirst

_____ 5. wird

_____ 6. werden

_____ 7. werdet

_____ 8. werden

We will now practice forming complete sentences in the future tense. Rewrite each of the following sentences, using the future tense. Make any necessary changes in word order.

1. Karl studiert in Köln.

_____.

2. Ingrid holt uns vom Bahnhof ab.¹

_____.

3. Wann verkaufen Meyers ihr altes Auto?

_____?

4. Wir laden Peter nicht mehr ein.

_____.

5. Herr Müller besucht Professor Schulz in München.

_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

6. Fahren Sie wieder nach Deutschland?

_____?

7. Kommen Hans und Ingrid auch?

_____?

8. Wann esst ihr zu Abend?

_____?

9. Verbringt der Soldat seinen Urlaub in Deutschland?

_____?

10. Ich rufe dich an.

_____.

11. Gehst du heute abend aus?

_____?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

¹Separable prefix verbs should cause you no problem if you remember the form of the main verb used in the future tense.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Karl wird in Köln studieren.

2. Ingrid wird uns vom Bahnhof abholen.

3. Wann werden Meyers ihr altes Auto verkaufen?

4. Wir werden Peter nicht mehr einladen.

5. Herr Müller wird Professor Schulz in München besuchen.

6. Werden Sie wieder nach Deutschland fahren?

7. Werden Hans und Ingrid auch kommen?

8. Wann werdet ihr zu Abend essen?

9. Wird der Soldat seinen Urlaub in Deutschland verbringen?

10. Ich werde dich anrufen.

11. Wirst du heute abend ausgehen?

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, changing the present tense verbs shown into the future tense. Make any necessary changes in word order.

1. Ich bestelle einen neuen Sportwagen.

2. Inge fliegt übermorgen nach Amerika.

3. Tanzt du heute abend mit Heidi?

4. Braucht ihr die Bücher?

5. Frau Meyer deckt den Tisch.

6. Wir nehmen die Kinder mit.

7. Zeigt ihr euren Freunden die Stadt?
8. Redet Professor Schulz lange?
9. Nach dem Kino warten wir auf euch.
10. Ich schreibe dir darüber.

Reflexive constructions in the future tense pose no difficulty if you remember that the reflexive pronoun immediately follows the inflected verb (i.e., the present tense form of werden). An exception is when subject and verb are inverted, as in questions or in sentences where a time expression or other sentence element begins the sentence. In these cases, the reflexive pronoun immediately follows the subject. (See **Lesson 13** for any needed review.)

Listen to and repeat each of the following sentences, noticing the German word order and the English translation.

1. Ich werde mir ein Bier bestellen.
(I will order a beer,)
2. Werdet ihr euch wiedersehen?
(Will you see each other again?)
3. Er wird sich sicher entschuldigen.
(He will certainly apologize.)
4. Wir werden uns den neuen Film ansehen.
(We will go and see the new movie.)
5. Werden Sie sich bestimmt mit ihnen treffen?
(Will you meet them for sure?)

Fill in the blanks to produce a complete sentence using the future tense of the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. He will certainly be interested in the book.
(sich interessieren)
Er _____ bestimmt für das Buch
_____.
2. They will first look at the new apartment.
(sich ansehen)
Sie _____ zuerst die neue Wohnung
_____.
3. Will you buy yourself a new Mercedes?
(sich kaufen)
_____ du _____ einen neuen Mercedes
_____?
4. I will apologize immediately.
(sich entschuldigen)
Ich _____ sofort _____.
5. We will get dressed now. (sich anziehen)
Wir _____ jetzt _____.
6. Will you say goodbye to him? (sich verabschieden)
_____ ihr _____ von ihm _____?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. wird sich
interessieren

_____ 2. werden sich
ansehen

_____ 3. Wirst dir
kaufen

_____ 4. werde mich
entschuldigen

_____ 5. werden uns
anziehen

_____ 6. Werdet euch
verabschieden

Say complete German sentences, supplying the future tense of the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. I am going to wash my hair. (sich waschen)

Ich das Haar

2. We will have a lot of fun tomorrow.
(sich amüsieren)

Wir morgen gut

3. Is Hans going to apologize to Peter?
(sich entschuldigen)

.... Hans bei Peter?

4. Are you going to make yourself a new dress?
(sich machen)

.... du ein neues Kleid?

5. They will order a bottle of wine with the dinner.
(sich bestellen)

Sie zum Essen eine Flasche Wein

6. Will you take a look at the new cars?
(sich ansehen)

.... ihr die neuen Autos?

START THE TAPE.

Write complete German sentences on the basis of the given English. Pay careful attention to word order.

NOTES

1. Will they apologize? (sich entschuldigen)

?

2. Franz will buy a new car. (sich kaufen)

.

3. Mr. and Mrs. Müller will have a look at New York.
(sich ansehen)

.

4. We will have fun tomorrow. (sich amüsieren)

.

5. Will you [fam., sing.] meet them tonight?
(sich treffen mit)

?

6. You [fam., pl.] will get to know each other.
(sich kennenlernen)

.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Werden sie sich entschuldigen?

2. Franz wird sich einen neuen Wagen kaufen.

3. Herr und Frau Müller werden sich New York ansehen.

4. Wir werden uns morgen amüsieren.

5. Wirst du dich heute abend mit ihnen treffen?

6. Ihr werdet euch kennenlernen.

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Section 3

Future Tense Expressing

Present Probability

In section 2, you learned that the future tense is used in speech or writing of a rather formal nature, and also in colloquial speech when the speaker wishes to give particular emphasis to the statement:

Ich werde nicht mehr rauchen.

(I'm not going to smoke any more.)

However, the future tense is also very frequently used in spoken German to indicate an assumption or conjecture on the part of the speaker. Such future forms do not express futurity but present probability:

Hans wird jetzt zu Hause sein.

(Hans is probably at home by now.)

Such a probability statement often contains adverbs such as wohl and wahrscheinlich (probably), sicher (most likely, undoubtedly, [certainly]) and vielleicht (perhaps). Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the use of the future tense together with some of the adverbs just listed and the English translations which, in compliance with idiomatic usage, are in the present tense.

1. Fritz wird wohl in seinem Zimmer sein.

(Fritz is probably in his room.)

2. Peter und Inge werden wahrscheinlich in der Wirtschaft sitzen und Bier trinken.

(Peter and Inge are most likely sitting in the tavern and drinking beer.)

3. Es wird wohl nicht wichtig sein.

(It's probably not important.)

4. Die Uhr geht nicht, sie wird sicher kaputt sein.

(The watch isn't running, it is most likely broken.)

5. Er wird wohl jetzt im Büro sein.

(He is probably at the office by now.)

6. Er wird wohl eine Erkältung haben.

(He probably has a cold.)

7. Sie wird vielleicht bei ihrer Freundin sein.

(Perhaps she is at her girl friend's.)

Say complete German sentences, supplying the proper form of the future tense plus the appropriate adverb, remembering that wohl and wahrscheinlich (probably) can be used interchangeably. Wohl, however, has higher frequency and should be used in the following exercises to eliminate an element of choice in the framework of this Lesson.

1. He is probably at home. (sein)

Er zu Hause

2. Perhaps they do not know anything about it yet. (wissen)

Sie noch nichts davon

3. Ingrid is most likely going out tonight.
(ausgehen)
Ingrid heute abend
4. Peter is probably staying in Berlin. (bleiben)
Peter in Berlin
5. The train from Cologne probably has no sleeping
car. (haben)
Der Zug aus Köln keinen Schlafwagen
6. She is undoubtedly very tired. (sein)
Sie sehr müde
7. They are probably eating at their mother's.
(essen)
Sie bei ihrer Mutter

Section 4

Future Tense in the Passive Voice

In section 2, you reviewed the difference between the future tense (active voice) and the present tense of the passive voice. In this section, you will learn to form the future tense of passive voice sentences.

Consider the following sentence in the present tense passive:

Er wird gerufen.

(He is being called.)

Now consider the same sentence transformed into the future tense (still in the passive voice):

Er wird gerufen werden.

(He will be called.)

What is the difference between the present tense passive and the future tense passive, as shown in these two examples?

The present tense passive and the future tense passive are identical except that in the future tense, the infinitive werden is placed immediately after the past participle of the main verb.

In this exercise, you will first reformulate the present tense passive sentences into the future tense passive, and then give the English translations. For example:

You see: Der Arzt wird gerufen.

You say: Der Arzt wird gerufen werden.

You hear (as confirmation):

Der Arzt wird gerufen werden.

You say: The doctor will be called.

You hear (as confirmation):

The doctor will be called.

1. Ihr werdet abgeholt.
2. Hans wird ans Telefon gerufen.
3. Unser Wagen wird gebraucht.
4. Diese alten Häuser werden nicht mehr verkauft.
5. Wirst du von Peter nach Hause gebracht?
6. Die Kinder werden jeden Abend gebadet.
7. Das wird gemacht.
8. Ich werde von meinen Nachbarn eingeladen.
9. Ihr werdet zum Bahnhof gebracht.

Fill in the blanks to produce a complete German sentence in the future tense, on the basis of the given English.

1. You will be picked up at the station. (abholen)

Ihr _____ vom Bahnhof _____.

2. This book will be read by many students. (lesen)

Dieses Buch _____ von vielen Studenten

_____.

3. Hans und Inge will also be invited. (einladen)

Hans und Inge _____ auch _____

_____.

4. You will be called by us. (anrufen)

Du _____ von uns _____.

5. This old car will not be used anymore.
(gebrauchen)

Dieses alte Auto _____ nicht mehr _____

_____.

6. The apartment will be cleaned next week.
(saubermachen)

Nächste Woche _____ die Wohnung

_____.

7. The house will be sold. (verkaufen)

Das Haus _____.

8. Hans' car will be repaired tomorrow. (reparieren)

Hans' Auto _____ morgen _____.

9. This expensive wine will not be bought. (kaufen)

Dieser teure Wein _____ nicht _____

_____.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct answers.

- _____ 1. werdet abgeholt
werden
- _____ 2. wird gelesen
werden
- _____ 3. werden eingeladen
werden
- _____ 4. wirst angerufen
werden
- _____ 5. wird gebraucht
werden
- _____ 6. wird saubergemacht
werden
- _____ 7. wird verkauft
werden
- _____ 8. wird repariert
werden
- _____ 9. wird gekauft
werden

Use of the future tense to express present probability (as explained and practiced in section 3) is, of course, also applicable to the future tense in the passive voice. Reconsider the sentence:

Er wird gerufen werden.

(He will be called.)

Now let us change this regular future-tense sentence into a sentence denoting present probability by using one of the adverbs you have already worked with in active-voice patterns. Notice that in this case the English translation is also in the future tense passive:

Er wird wohl gerufen werden.

(He probably will be called.)

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences in the future tense on the basis of the given English. Include wohl or some of the other previously introduced adverbs wherever present probability is indicated.

1. This movie will probably not be shown until next week. (zeigen)
Dieser Film erst nächste Woche
2. The letters will be written the day after tomorrow. (schreiben)
Die Briefe übermorgen
3. Our roof will be repaired this month. (reparieren)
Unser Dach diesen Monat

4. This museum will be visited by many tourists.
(besuchen)
Dieses Museum von vielen Touristen
5. My old suitcases will most likely not be needed
any longer. (brauchen)
Meine alten Koffer nicht länger
6. Will you be picked up at the train station?
(abholen)
.... Sie vom Bahnhof?
7. Professor Schulz will be invited by his neighbors.
(einladen)
Professor Schulz von seinen Nachbarn
8. The new department store will be opened tomorrow.
(eröffnen)
Das neue Kaufhaus morgen

Write complete German sentences in the future tense on the basis of the given English.

NOTES

1. Will they also be invited? (einladen)

?

2. This book will still be needed later on.
(brauchen)

.

3. Will this letter be taken to the post office this morning? (bringen)

?

4. This cold beer will soon be drunk.
(trinken)

.

5. Lieutenant Schmidt will be picked up at the hotel. (abholen)

.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

1. Werden sie auch eingeladen werden?

2. Dieses Buch wird später noch gebraucht werden.

3. Wird dieser Brief heute morgen zur Post gebracht werden?

4. Dieses kalte Bier wird bald getrunken werden.

5. Leutnant Schmidt wird vom Hotel abgeholt werden.

START THE TAPE.

Pre-Noun InsertsExtended Adjectival and Adverbial Constructions

In **Lesson 33** you learned the use of present and past participles as adjectives or adverbs. In this **Lesson**, we will practice and learn an extension pattern of these already familiar structural features. For instance, when a present or past participle used as a descriptive adjective is modified by various additional elements we call these pre-noun inserts an extended adjectival construction. When, however, a present participle used as an adverb is modified by other elements the entire phrase is called an extended adverbial construction. Word order for these constructions will be discussed and exemplified later.

The **Lesson** is divided into the following sections:

1. Overview of Pre-Noun Inserts;
Extended Adjectival Constructions Containing Past Participles
2. Extended Adjectival Constructions Containing Present Participles
3. Extended Adverbial Constructions Containing Present Participles

Overview of Pre-Noun Inserts;Extended Adjectival ConstructionsContainingPast Participles

In **Lesson 33**, section 4, you learned that present participles and past participles can be used as descriptive adjectives, in sentences such as:

Die spielenden Kinder laufen durch den Garten.
(The playing children run through the garden.)

Das reparierte Auto kann jetzt verkauft werden.
(The repaired car can now be sold.)

Where are these participles that are used as descriptive adjectives located with respect to the noun to which they refer?

As any descriptive adjective, the present or past participle precedes the noun when it has this adjectival function.

It is a feature of German syntax (and one which is somewhat foreign to speakers of English) to build up a number of words or phrases referring to a noun; these words are placed in front of the noun as a sort of "wedge" between the noun and the definite or indefinite article (or some other "der[dieser]" word or "kein" word) which otherwise would be much closer to it.

For example, consider the following simple sentence:

Dieses Auto fährt gut.

(This car runs well.)

The demonstrative dieses is just in front of the noun to which it refers (Auto). By adding the past participle gebraucht, used as a descriptive adjective, the sentence becomes:

Dieses gebrauchte Auto fährt gut.

(This used car runs well.)

It is also possible, in both English and German, to add additional elements, such as a qualifying adverb, to the above sentence:

Dieses kaum gebrauchte Auto fährt gut.

(This barely used car runs well.)

However, where an English speaker would, in most cases, not add other elements to a pre-noun insert (but rather place the entire construction after the noun), it is possible in German to expand the above sentence considerably. For example:

1. Dieses alte, aber kaum gebrauchte Auto fährt gut.

(This old, but barely used car runs well.)

Or:

2. Dieses alte, aber von seinem Besitzer kaum gebrauchte Auto fährt gut.

(This old, but by its owner barely used car runs well.)

Or:

3. Dieses alte, aber bis heute von seinem Besitzer kaum gebrauchte Auto fährt gut.

(This old, but until now by its owner barely used car runs well.)

The literal English equivalents for the above three examples are, of course, "far-fetched" and have only been provided to aid you in the initial understanding of the German construction.

Reexamining the German sentences, you can note that the past participle and other qualifying words all precede the noun and separate it from the "der" [dieser] or "kein" word which would normally be next to or quite close to it in a simple sentence.

In spoken German, a relative clause usually takes the place of these extended adjectival constructions, as would be the case in English. Thus the third example above would be restated in spoken German (and translated into English) as:

Dieses alte Auto, das bis heute von seinem Besitzer kaum gebraucht worden ist, fährt gut.

(This old car, which until now has barely been used by its owner, runs well.)

Notice that the German dependent (relative) clause simply drops its subject and the inflected verb belonging to it (plus the past participle worden), when it is transformed into an adjectival construction.

The extended adjectival constructions do, however, frequently occur in written German, such as certain kinds of expository prose (especially scientific and legal material). Since you would normally encounter this style only in reading, this **Lesson** will emphasize only the comprehension of such sentences rather than their active production.

The fact that extended adjectival constructions typically serve as a "wedge" between a "der[dieser]" word or "kein" word and its noun provides a clue by which you can detect their use in a sentence. Whenever a specifier of these word groups is not followed immediately by a noun, you should make it a practice to glance ahead until you locate the noun to which the "der[dieser]" word or "kein" word refers. This will help you identify the noun to which the construction is referring.

Following this, you should attempt to reformulate the various components of the German extended adjectival construction (adjectives, prepositional phrases or other elements) in the manner briefly exemplified on the previous page. Let us now go through this process step by step, considering the German sentence:

Das vor zwei Monaten in dem Kaufhaus bestellte
Sofa kam heute an.

We are encountering the definite article das at the beginning of the sentence. To what noun is das referring?

In the example sentence, das refers to Sofa. The subject of the German sentence is das Sofa, and you would begin the corresponding English sentence with "The sofa"

Sentence elements which follow the subject (Sofa) constitute the predicate portion of the entire sentence and pose no problem of interpretation. Thus, you could think of the English frame:

The sofa arrived today.

The question is how to make sense of the German pre-noun inserts, that is to say, to analyze the words appearing between Das and Sofa:

.... vor zwei Monaten in dem Kaufhaus bestellte

A useful approach is to separate the prepositional phrases or other sentence elements which make up the entire construction:

vor zwei Monaten	in dem Kaufhaus	bestellte
(two months ago)	(in the department store)	(ordered)

At this point, the only remaining problem is to find a suitable English phrasing which incorporates all of these elements. This could be:

The sofa ordered two months ago in the department store arrived today.

or, expanding the German past participle into a relative clause in English:

The sofa that was ordered two months ago in the department store arrived today, which would correspond to the spoken German pattern:

Das Sofa, das vor zwei Monaten in dem Kaufhaus bestellt worden war, ist heute angekommen.

NOTES

We will now practice analyzing typical German sentences with extended adjectival constructions.

For each of the sentences below, draw:

- 1) a double line under the "der[dieser]" word or "ein" word which refers to the noun modified by the entire construction;
- 2) a double line under the noun itself;
- 3) a wavy line under the past participle;
- 4) a single line under all of the other elements.

1. Diese alte am Rhein gelegene Stadt hat viele Kirchen.
2. Mit dem in München gebauten BMW Sportwagen gewann er im Rennen.
3. Eine in Deutschland gekaufte Maschine kam gestern in Tokio an.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

You should now write the English for the "framework" of each of the three example sentences, leaving aside for the moment the adjectival construction itself.

1. Diese Stadt hat viele Kirchen.

2. Mit dem BMW Sportwagen gewann er im Rennen.

3. Eine Maschine kam gestern in Tokio an.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct answers are:

1. Diese alte am Rhein gelegene Stadt hat viele Kirchen.
2. Mit dem in München gebauten BMW Sportwagen gewann er im Rennen.
3. Eine in Deutschland gekaufte Maschine kam gestern in Tokio an.

The correct answers are:

1. This town has many churches.
2. With the BMW sports car, he won at the races.
3. A machine arrived yesterday in Tokyo.

START THE TAPE.

The next step is to analyze the extended adjectival construction itself.

NOTES

- 1) the entire construction should be broken down into its component elements (adjectives, past participles, prepositional phrases, etc.);
- 2) as part of an adjectival construction, the German past participle can often be more suitably expressed in English by a relative clause.

On the lines below, write idiomatic English translations of the entire German sentences. In some cases, you will have to change the word order of the English "framework" when writing out the entire sentence.

1. Diese alte am Rhein gelegene Stadt hat viele Kirchen.

2. Mit dem in München gebauten BMW Sportwagen gewann er im Rennen.

3. Eine in Deutschland gekaufte Maschine kam gestern in Tokio an.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct answers are:

1. This old town which is situated on the Rhine has many churches.

2. With the BMW sports car that was built in Munich he won at the races.

3. A machine bought in Germany arrived yesterday in Tokyo.

(Note:) Your sentences may vary slightly from those shown. Consider your answer correct if it renders all of the elements contained in the original German sentence as well as its proper meaning.

START THE TAPE.

In the following exercises, you will be asked simply to provide the English equivalents for a series of German sentences, without explicitly going through the analysis steps you have been practicing. However, you should continue to analyze the sentences mentally along the lines discussed in order to arrive at the correct rendering of the German sentences.

Write idiomatic English sentences corresponding to the German sentences shown below.

1. Das mit ihrem [pl.] gesparten Geld gekaufte Einfamilienhaus ist gut gebaut.

2. Mit dem gestern von Hans geliehenen Stadtplan fand er sich leicht zurecht.

3. Trotz der ihm gegebenen genauen Auskunft hat er sich die falsche Fahrkarte gelöst.

4. Nach dem ruhig auf dem Land verbrachten Tagen fand er die Stadt besonders laut.

5. Dieser in allen amerikanischen Städten gezeigte Film wird bald nach Deutschland kommen.

6. Das von Fräulein Müller getragene hübsche Kleid hat sie sich selbst gemacht.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct answers are:

1. The one-family home that was purchased with their savings is well-built.
2. With the city map that he had borrowed yesterday from Hans, he found his way around easily.
3. In spite of the exact information that was given to him, he bought the wrong ticket.
4. After the quietly spent days in the country, he found the city especially loud.
5. This film, shown in all the American cities, will soon come to Germany.

6. The pretty dress worn by Miss Müller she made herself.

START THE TAPE.

For each of the sentences below, you will be given a short time to analyze the sentence. Then, when you hear a signal tone, say aloud an idiomatic English equivalent. You will then hear a confirmation on tape.

1. Das neulich in England gekaufte Bild hängt jetzt in einem Münchener Museum.
2. Der gestern noch von zwei Ärzten untersuchte Patient ist plötzlich gestorben.
3. Das von vielen Leuten besuchte Fussballspiel war sehr aufregend.
4. Mein übers Wochenende zu Hause gelassener kleiner Hund wird froh sein, wenn ich zurückkomme.
5. Dieses von einem berühmten Professor geschriebene Lehrbuch ist ausgezeichnet..

Section 2

Extended Adjectival Constructions Containing Present Participles

In the preceding section, you practiced analyzing extended adjectival constructions containing past participles. For example:

Das von Professor Schulz begonnene Experiment wurde von Professor Meyer beendet.

(The experiment begun by Professor Schulz was finished by Professor Meyer.)

The past participle in this sentence (as those in all the sentences of Section 1) serves as an adjective and thus requires an appropriate adjective ending:

das begonnene Experiment

In addition to past participles, present participles can also serve as descriptive adjectives in extended constructions. You have already studied this to some extent in *Lesson 33*, in sentences such as:

Das landende Flugzeug kommt aus München.

(The landing plane comes from Munich.)

1. What is the present participle in the above sentence?
2. To what noun does it refer?

3. Why is the ending -e added to the base form landend?

The answers are:

1. landende
2. Flugzeug
3. because the noun is nominative singular, neuter

In this section, you will work with sentences containing present participles functioning as descriptive adjectives in extended constructions which include several other elements in addition to the present participle itself. The procedures used in analyzing these constructions are similar to those you have already practiced in the preceding section. Again, a detailed example will be given, after which you will be asked to work immediately with complete German sentences.

Der dem jungen amerikanischen Soldaten den Weg zeigende Berliner war sehr freundlich.

- 1) double line under the noun to which the entire construction refers and under the associated "der [dieser]" word or "ein" word;
- 2) a wavy line under the present participle used as a descriptive adjective;
- 3) a single line under all of the other elements which precede the noun.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct answer is:

Der dem jungen amerikanischen Soldaten
den Weg zeigende Berliner war sehr freundlich.

Omitting the extended adjectival construction itself, write the English for the "framework" of the German sentence:

Der Berliner war sehr freundlich.

Correct answer:

The Berliner was very friendly.
Now analyze the adjectival construction itself, grouping it into individual units of meaning which are not necessarily sequential:

den Weg zeigende
(showing the way)

dem jungen amerikanischen Soldaten
(to the young American soldier)

Finally, combine all elements of the German sentence into a single idiomatic English rendering:

Der dem jungen amerikanischen Soldaten den Weg zeigende Berliner war sehr freundlich.

The correct answer is given below. (Your response may vary somewhat from that shown.)

The Berliner who was showing the way to the young American soldier was very friendly.

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

For each of the sentences below, you will be given a short time to analyze the sentence. Then, when you hear a signal tone, say aloud an idiomatic English equivalent. You will then hear a confirmation on tape.

1. Das um die Ecke kommende Auto gehört meinem Vater.
2. Die auf der Strasse spielenden Kinder werden von ihrer Mutter gerufen.
3. Meine ihren Urlaub oft in Deutschland verbringende Freundin schickt mir immer Ansichtskarten.
4. Diesen immer so laut lachenden, freundlichen Herrn habe ich schon oft gesehen.
5. Der in Amerika lebende junge Schauspieler wird einige Wochen in Berlin bleiben.
6. Das Herrn Meyer seit zwanzig Jahren gehörende Haus bekommt ein neues Dach.

Extended Adverbial ConstructionsContaining Present Participles

The two preceding sections dealt with extended adjectival constructions containing either a past participle or a present participle as pre-noun inserts. That is to say, the participles were used as descriptive adjectives and had to show the appropriate adjective endings. It is also possible to have extended constructions in which a present participle is used with an adverbial meaning. In these instances, the form of the present participle is simply the invariable base form (infinitive plus -d). Listen to and repeat each of the sentences below, noticing the present participle being used in each case and the idiomatic English translation:

1. Lange auf den Zug wartend, standen sie auf dem Bahnsteig.
(They stood on the platform waiting for the train a long time.)
2. Gerade aus dem Haus kommend, steckte Herr Meyer sich eine Zigarette an.
(Just coming out of the house, Mr. Meyer lit a cigarette.)
3. Schnell das Fenster aufmachend, rief sie um Hilfe.
(Opening the window quickly, she cried for help.)

4. Langsam durch die Stadt fahrend, sah er sich die Häuser an.
(Driving slowly through the town, he looked at the houses.)

Keeping in mind that the present participles in these sentences are being used adverbially, turn back to the preceding page and place a check mark over the word in each sentence to which the present participle and the other elements of the extended construction refer. The correct answers are shown below.

1. Lange auf den Zug wartend, standen sie auf dem Bahnsteig.
(They stood on the platform waiting for the train a long time.)
2. Gerade aus dem Haus kommend, steckte Herr Meyer sich eine Zigarette an.
(Just coming out of the house, Mr. Meyer lit a cigarette.)
3. Schnell das Fenster aufmachend, rief sie um Hilfe.
(Opening the window quickly, she cried for help.)
4. Langsam durch die Stadt fahrend, sah er sich die Häuser an.
(Driving slowly through the town, he looked at the houses.)

START THE TAPE.

Extended constructions using present participles adverbially are relatively easy to comprehend, if you remember that the entire construction provides additional information about the action expressed in the main verb. Thus, in the first example sentence, the extended construction gives several additional pieces of information related to the verb standen (stood).

The people referred to stood:

- 1) waiting for the train (auf den Zug wartend)
- 2) a long time (lange).

In analyzing and translating German sentences of this type, it is also helpful to note that elements which precede the present participle in the German sentence usually follow it in the corresponding English sentence. For example:

"Schnell das Fenster aufmachend"

literally:

"Quickly the window opening"

would be rendered as:

"Opening the window quickly"

Write idiomatic English sentences on the basis of the German sentences shown. (Your response may vary somewhat from that shown.)

1. Die Tür zuwerfend, rannte Herr Meyer böse aus dem Hause.

2. Auf die Fragen der Gäste nicht antwortend, ging der Kellner zum nächsten Tisch.

3. Schnell einen Blick in die Zeitung werfend, frühstückte er.

4. Gesund aus dem Urlaub zurückkommend, beginnt Professor Meyer wieder zu arbeiten.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Correct answers are:

NOTES

1. Slamming the door shut, Mr. Meyer ran angrily out of the house.
2. Not answering the questions of the guests, the waiter went to the next table.
3. Quickly glancing at the newspaper, he ate his breakfast.
4. Coming back from his vacation in good health, Professor Meyer begins to work again.

5. Langsam ein Glas dunkles Bier trinkend, sass er
im Restaurant.

6. Die schweren Koffer tragend, stieg er in den
Zug ein.

7. Immer wieder durch die Strassen fahrend, suchte
sie einen Parkplatz.

8. Auf die Fragen der Schüler freundlich antwortend,
geht der Lehrer durch das Klassenzimmer.

You will be given a moment to read and analyze each of the sentences below. Then, when the tone sounds, say an idiomatic English equivalent. (Again, your response may vary somewhat from the confirmation you will hear on the tape.)

1. Den Kellner um eine Zeitung bittend, setzte er sich an den Tisch.

2. Sich in einem Café mit einem Bekannten unterhaltend, beschrieb Herr Müller sein neues Haus.

3. Sich die Adresse der Bank aufschreibend, dankte Peter dem Fräulein im Büro.

4. Sich für den netten Abend bedankend, verabschiedeten sich die Gäste.

5. Eine Zigarette ausmachend, ging er ins Bett.

6. Uns die kleine Stadt ansehend, gingen wir durch die Strassen.

7. Keine Zeit verlierend, fing er mit der Arbeit an.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct answers are:

NOTES

5. Slowly drinking a glass of dark beer, he sat in the restaurant.

6. Carrying the heavy suitcases, he boarded the train.

7. Driving through the streets again and again, she looked for a parking place.

8. The teacher walks through the classroom, answering the questions of the students in a friendly manner.

Passive Voice (Imperfect Tense)

In this *lesson*, you will form and practice passive voice sentences in the imperfect tense. Two sections are included:

1. Imperfect Tense of Passive Voice Sentences
2. Imperfect Tense of Passive Sentences Containing Modal Auxiliaries

Imperfect Tense of Passive Voice Sentences

In *Lesson 28*, you learned to form passive voice constructions in the present tense. In this *lesson*, you will learn and practice the imperfect tense of passive constructions. It will first be useful to review the way in which present tense sentences are formed in the passive voice.

Listen to and repeat the following present tense passive sentence:

Der Offizier wird vom Flugplatz abgeholt.

1. What is the English equivalent of this sentence?
2. What grammatical form constitutes the last word of the sentence (abgeholt)?
3. There is another verb in the example sentence. What verb is it, and in what grammatical form does it appear?
4. In what tense is the auxiliary verb in the example sentence? (Remember that the example is in the present tense passive.)

Now listen to and repeat an example sentence in the imperfect tense of the passive voice:

Der Offizier wurde vom Flugplatz abgeholt.

How does this sentence differ from the preceding (present tense) example?

The only difference is that the auxiliary verb werden is in the imperfect tense. All other elements of the sentence are exactly the same as those in the corresponding present tense passive sentence:

Der Offizier wird vom Flugplatz abgeholt. (present)

Der Offizier wurde vom Flugplatz abgeholt. (imperfect)

How would you translate the second example sentence into English?

From this analysis, you see that the imperfect tense form of passive voice sentences is closely analogous to the present tense passive, with the single exception that the conjugated auxiliary verb werden is in the imperfect tense.

From **Lesson 30**, you will probably recall the imperfect tense forms of werden. However, you should work through the following exercises for review. Listen to and repeat the following forms:

ich wurde

du wurdest

er [sie, es] wurde

wir wurden

ihr wurdet

sie wurden

Sie wurden

Stop your tape and study these forms. Then turn the page for exercises.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense forms of werden.

1. wir _____
2. er _____
3. Sie _____
4. ihr _____
5. du _____
6. ich _____
7. sie [pl.] _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say the appropriate imperfect tense forms of werden.

1. Sie
2. du
3. wir
4. sie [sing.]
5. ich
6. sie [pl.]
7. ihr

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of werden to make a complete passive voice sentence in the imperfect tense. Notice the past participle of the main verb at the end of the sentence and the English translation.

1. Wir _____ von Peter zum Bahnhof gebracht.
(We were taken to the train station by Peter.)
2. Das reparierte Fahrrad _____ gestern abgeholt.
(The repaired bicycle was picked up yesterday.)
3. _____ du neulich zu Professor Schulz gerufen?
(Were you recently called to see Professor Schulz?)
4. Die Briefe _____ heute morgen zur Post gebracht.
(The letters were brought to the post office this morning.)
5. _____ das Auto gestern abend in die Garage gefahren?
(Was the car driven into the garage last night?)
6. Gestern _____ die neuen Filme aus Deutschland gezeigt.
(The new movies from Germany were shown yesterday.)
7. _____ ihr oft von Müllers eingeladen?
(Were you often invited by the Müllers?)
8. Ich _____ von meinen Studenten gesucht.
(I was looked for by my students.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. wurden
- _____ 2. wurde
- _____ 3. wurden
- _____ 4. wurdet
- _____ 5. wurdest
- _____ 6. wurde
- _____ 7. wurden

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. wurden
- _____ 2. wurde
- _____ 3. Wurdest
- _____ 4. wurden

_____ 5. Wurde

_____ 6. wurden

_____ 7. Wurdet

_____ 8. wurde

START THE TAPE

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate verb form to make a complete passive voice sentence in the imperfect tense.

1. Die müden Kinder.... früh ins Bett gelegt.
(The tired children were put to bed early.)
2. Unser ganzer Wein gestern abend getrunken.
(All our wine was drunk last night.)
3. Das ganze Buch in zwei Monaten geschrieben.
(The entire book was written in two months.)
4.du heute morgen von Heidi begrüsst?
(Were you greeted by Heidi this morning?)
5. Warum ihr gestern nicht mitgenommen?
(Why weren't you taken along yesterday?)

In the exercises which follow, you will be asked to supply both the proper imperfect tense form of werden and the past participle of the main verb. The verbs to be used are shown below. By now, you should have learned their past participles thoroughly, since they have been used in a number of previous modules, especially **Lessons 21, 22, 28, and 32**. By way of "final review," the infinitives and past participles of the verbs to be used in this module are shown below. In **Lessons 30** and following, your knowledge of the past participles of these and the other verbs used in the **Lessons** will be assumed, and the past participles will not be formally practiced further.

Listen to and repeat both the infinitive and the past participle in the pauses provided, noticing the English translation.

	<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
abholen	(pick up)	abgeholt
antworten	(answer, reply)	geantwortet
aufmachen	(open)	aufgemacht
besuchen ¹	(visit)	besucht ¹
brauchen	(need)	gebraucht
danken	(thank)	gedankt
glauben	(believe, trust)	geglaubt
grüßen	(greet)	gegrüsst
legen	(put, place, lay)	gelegt
lernen	(learn)	gelernt
machen	(make)	gemacht

(¹note omission of ge - prefix)

parken	(park)	geparkt
rasieren ¹	(shave)	rasiert ¹
rauchen	(smoke)	geraucht
reparieren ¹	(repair, fix)	repariert ¹
sagen	(say, tell)	gesagt
stellen	(put, place, lay)	gestellt
suchen	(look for)	gesucht
verkaufen ¹	(sell)	verkauft ¹
zeigen	(show)	gezeigt
zumachen	(close)	zugemacht
anziehen	(dress)	angezogen
bringen	(bring, take)	gebracht
einladen	(invite)	eingeladen
helfen	(help)	geholfen
lesen	(read)	gelesen
mitnehmen	(take along)	mitgenommen
rufen	(call)	-gerufen
schreiben	(write)	geschrieben
trinken	(drink)	getrunken
unternehmen ¹	(undertake)	unternommen ¹
waschen	(wash)	gewaschen ¹

(¹note omission of ge - prefix)

in which a dative verb is used follow a somewhat different sentence construction pattern. This is exemplified by the German equivalent of English sentences such as:

The lady is being helped.

In the English sentence, "the lady" is the subject of the sentence. However, in the German passive equivalent, "the lady" is not the subject but is instead the dative object of the "dative" verb helfen. The German sentence is thus:

Der Dame wird geholfen.

(The lady is being helped.)

In sentences of this type, it is a grammatical convention to use the third person singular (er, sie, es) form of werden to correspond to the (unnamed) agent of the action taking place. Thus, the following German sentence is also correct:

Den Damen wird geholfen.

(The ladies are being helped.)

The same observations apply to imperfect tense passive sentences using "dative" verbs, the only difference being the tense of the auxiliary werden. On this basis, how would you say

"The lady was helped"

in German, using the imperfect tense?

You would say:

Der Dame wurde geholfen.

objects in the imperfect tense passive. Translate each English sentence into German, noting that a "dative" main verb is involved in each instance.

1. The gentleman was thanked for the book. (danken)

2. Were you (fam., sing.) helped last night? (helfen)

_____?

3. The children were not answered. (antworten)

4. The teacher was not believed. (glauben)

5. Were you (formal) thanked for the flowers? (danken)

_____?

6. They were helped at once. (helfen)

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

1. Dem Herrn wurde für das Buch gedankt.

2. Wurde dir gestern abend geholfen?

3. Den Kindern wurde nicht geantwortet.

4. Dem Lehrer wurde nicht geglaubt.

5. Wurde Ihnen für die Blumen gedankt?

6. Ihnen wurde sofort geholfen.

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the imperfect tense (passive voice) on the basis of the given English. This exercise includes some "dative" verbs.

1. The car was repaired at once (reparieren)

Das Auto _____ sofort _____.

2. Hans and Inge were picked up at home every morning. (abholen)

Hans and Inge _____ jeden Morgen zu Hause _____.

3. The new student was visited by his classmates. (besuchen)

Der neue Schuler _____ von seinen Klassenkameraden _____.

4. Mr. Meyer's car was washed every week. (waschen)

Herrn Meyers Auto _____ jede Woche _____.

5. She simply wasn't answered. (antworten)

Ihr _____ einfach nicht _____.

6. In the summer the stores were always open at nine o'clock. (offnen)

Im Sommer _____ die Laden immer um neun Uhr _____.

7. I was always greeted by my neighbors. (grüssen)

Ich _____ immer von meinen Nachbarn _____.

8. The child was looked for all over town. (suchen)

Das Kind _____ in der ganzen Stadt _____.

9. Yesterday we were shown the new museum. (zeigen)

Gestern _____ uns das neue Museum _____.

10. Why weren't you believed? (glauben)

Warum _____ dir nicht _____?

11. A lot was being drunk in the old tavern. (trinken)

In der alten Wirtschaft _____ viel _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. wurde repariert

_____ 2. wurden abgeholt

_____ 3. wurde besucht

_____ 4. wurde gewaschen

_____ 5. wurde geantwortet

_____ 6. wurden geöffnet

_____ 7. wurde gegrüsst

_____ 8. wurde gesucht

_____ 9. wurde gezeigt

_____ 10. wurde geglaubt

_____ 11. wurde getrunken

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, incorporating the appropriate form of the imperfect tense (passive voice).

1. Weren't you needed anymore at the office?
(brauchen)
.... du nicht mehr im Büro?
2. Not much was said about that. (sagen)
Darüber nicht viel
3. We were brought to the hospital. (bringen)
Wir ins Krankenhaus
4. This magazine was read a great deal by students.
(lesen)
Diese Zeitschrift viel von Schülern
5. When I was sick I was shaved every morning.
(rasieren)
Als ich krank war, ich jeden Morgen
6. Why weren't you thanked for the nice present?
(danken)
Warum euch nicht für das nette Geschenk?
7. Hans, you were just looked for by Peter. (suchen)
Hans, du gerade von Peter
8. The car was parked by the gentleman. (parken)
Das Auto von dem Herrn

Lesson 28 discussed the use of the indefinite pronoun man in active voice sentences which correspond in meaning to passive voice sentences. For example, this active voice sentence with man:

Man repariert die alte Kirche.

could be rephrased in the passive voice (and omitting man) as:

Die alte Kirche wird repariert.

Both the active voice sentence with man and the passive voice sentence omitting man could be translated in a number of ways in English:

One is repairing the old church.

They are repairing the old church.

The old church is being repaired.

The above examples show German sentences in the present tense of both the active and passive voices. Analogous possibilities exist for imperfect tense sentences, as shown below:

Man reparierte die alte Kirche. (active)

or:

Die alte Kirche wurde repariert. (passive)

English equivalents for either sentence would be:

One repaired the old church.

They repaired the old church.

The old church was repaired.

The following exercises practice the formation of imperfect tense passive sentences based on active voice sentences with man. The proper word order for passive voice sentences is also required.

Rewrite the German sentences to produce sentences in the imperfect tense of the passive voice. Note that either the accusative object (which becomes the grammatical subject of the passive sentence) or the dative object is used. Remember also that the only possible (imperfect) form of werden with dative objects is wurde.

1. Man schrieb lange Briefe.

(Long letters were written.)

2. Man zog die Kinder warm an.

(The children were dressed warmly.)

3. Man unternahm eine Weltreise.

(A trip around the world was undertaken.)

4. In der Schule lernte man Deutsch.

(German was learned in school.)

5. Man dankte den Schülern für ihre Hilfe.

(The students were thanked for their help.)

6. Man wusch die Autos jede Woche.

(The cars were washed each week.)

7. Man rasierte den alten Herrn jeden Morgen.

(The old man was shaved every morning.)

8. Warum antwortete man Ihnen nicht?

(Why weren't you answered?)

9. Man parkte den Wagen in der Einfahrt.

(The car was parked in the driveway.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Lange Briefe wurden geschrieben.

2. Die Kinder wurden warm angezogen.

3. Eine Weltreise wurde unternommen.

4. In der Schule wurde Deutsch gelernt.

5. Den Schülern wurde für ihre Hilfe gedankt.

6. Die Autos wurden jede Woche gewaschen.

7. Der alte Herr wurde jeden Morgen rasiert.

8. Warum wurde Ihnen nicht geantwortet?

9. Der Wagen wurde in der Einfahrt geparkt.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, changing the active sentences with man into passive sentences. Use the imperfect tense throughout.

1. Man brachte uns etwas zu essen.
(We were brought something to eat.)
2. Zeigte man euch die Stadt?
(Were you shown the town?)
3. Bei Herrn Schulz lernte man viel Deutsch.
(In Mr. Schulz' class much German was learned.)
4. Man nahm warme Kleider auf die Reise mit.
(Warm clothes were taken along on the trip.)
5. Man dankte den Eltern für das Geschenk.
(The parents were thanked for the present.)
6. Man brachte den Offizier in sein Hotel.
(The officer was brought to his hotel.)
7. Man half den Kindern bei den Hausaufgaben.
(The children were helped with the homework.)
8. Man legte die Zeitungen auf den Tisch.
(The newspapers were put on the table.)
9. Man las das Buch in ganz Deutschland.
(The book was read all over Germany.)

Section 2

Imperfect Tense of Passive Sentences

Containing Modal Auxiliaries

In this section you will learn to form and use the imperfect tense of the passive voice in sentences containing a modal auxiliary verb in addition to the main verb. We will first review the use of modal auxiliaries in present tense passive sentences. Listen to and repeat the following sentence, which shows a present tense passive sentence without a modal auxiliary:

Die Arbeit wird jetzt gemacht.

(The work is being done now.)

Now consider the following sentence in which the modal auxiliary verb müssen is added:

Die Arbeit muss sofort gemacht werden.

(The work has to be done at once.)

As you remember, the conjugated form of the modal auxiliary verb takes the place of the conjugated form of werden, and werden, in its infinitive form, is placed at the end of the sentence, immediately following the past participle of the main verb.

Now consider the formation of imperfect tense passive sentences containing modal auxiliaries. Can you say which verb would be changed to the imperfect tense?

In imperfect tense passive voice sentences containing modal auxiliaries, it is the modal auxiliary which is in the imperfect tense. All other sentence elements remain the same as the present tense pattern for the passive with modal auxiliaries. Thus, the imperfect tense equivalent of:

Die Arbeit muss sofort gemacht werden.

(The work has to be done at once.)

is:

Die Arbeit musste sofort gemacht werden.

(The work had to be done at once.)

Thus, in order to form imperfect tense passive sentences with modal auxiliaries, you must know the imperfect tense forms of the modal auxiliaries in the various persons (i.e., the ich, du, er, wir, etc. forms).

In **Lesson 29**, you learned the imperfect tense forms of the modal auxiliaries in connection with their use in active voice sentences. These forms are shown below for review. As you may remember, the imperfect tense of modal auxiliaries is formed by adding the imperfect endings for regular verbs to the infinitive stem and replacing the umlaut (if any) with the corresponding non-umlaut vowel.

For example:

INFINITIVE:	können
INFINITIVE STEM (with umlaut replaced)	konn-
IMPERFECT ENDING (for <u>ich</u> form)	-te
IMPERFECT TENSE FORM:	(ich) konnte

Listen to and repeat the following imperfect tense forms of the modal auxiliary verbs. Note the difference in pronunciation between the umlauted vowels (as in the infinitive form and the present tense plural forms) and the non-umlauted imperfect tense forms.

können

ich konnte	wir konnten
du konntest	ihr konntet
er [sie, es] konnte	sie konnten
	Sie konnten

müssen

ich musste	wir mussten
du musstest	ihr musstet
er [sie, es] musste	sie mussten
	Sie mussten

dürfen

ich durfte	wir durften
du durftest	ihr durftet
er [sie, es] durfte	sie durften
	Sie durften

wollen

ich wollte	wir wollten
du wolltest	ihr wolltet
er [sie, es] wollte	sie wollten
	Sie wollten

sollen

ich sollte	wir sollten
du solltest	ihr solltet
er [sie, es] sollte	sie sollten
	Sie sollten

NOTES

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense forms of the modal auxiliary verbs shown in parentheses.

1. (dürfen) er _____
2. (können) sie [pl.] _____
3. (müssen) ihr _____
4. (sollen) Sie _____
5. (wollen) es _____
6. (dürfen) ich _____
7. (können) du _____
8. (müssen) sie [sing.] _____
9. (sollen) wir _____
10. (wollen) ihr _____
11. (können) er _____
12. (dürfen) du _____
13. (sollen) es _____
14. (müssen) er _____
15. (wollen) du _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say the German, supplying the appropriate imperfect tense forms of the modal auxiliary verbs in parentheses.

1. (wollen) sie [sing.]
2. (können) ich
3. (müssen) wir
4. (dürfen) Sie
5. (sollen) ihr
6. (können) du
7. (wollen) sie [pl.]
8. (dürfen) er
9. (müssen) sie [sing.]
10. (sollen) es
11. (wollen) ich
12. (können) ihr
13. (dürfen) sie [pl.]
14. (müssen) du
15. (sollen) ich

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate imperfect tense form of the modal auxiliary verbs in parentheses.

1. Die Koffer noch mal aufgemacht werden.
(müssen)
(The suitcases had to be opened once more.)
2. Unser Wagen gestern verkauft werden. (sollen)
(Our car was supposed to be sold yesterday.)
3. Wir sofort gerufen werden. (wollen)
(We wanted to be called at once.)
4. Karls neues Auto repariert werden. (müssen)
(Karl's new car had to be repaired.)
5. Die Schülerinnen am Wochenende von ihren
Freunden besucht werden. (dürfen)
(The students were allowed to be visited by their
boy friends on the weekend.)
6. Die Hausaufgaben jeden Abend gemacht werden.
(müssen)
(The homework had to be done every evening.)
7. Die bestellten Waren erst gestern geliefert
werden. (können)
(The merchandise ordered could not be delivered
until yesterday.)

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- | | |
|-------|--------------|
| _____ | 1. durfte |
| _____ | 2. konnten |
| _____ | 3. musstet |
| _____ | 4. sollten |
| _____ | 5. wollte |
| _____ | 6. durfte |
| _____ | 7. konntest |
| _____ | 8. musste |
| _____ | 9. sollten |
| _____ | 10. wolltet |
| _____ | 11. konnte |
| _____ | 12. durftest |
| _____ | 13. sollte |
| _____ | 14. musste |
| _____ | 15. wolltest |

Rewrite the following passive sentences so as to incorporate the appropriate form of the modal auxiliary verb in parentheses. For example:

You see: Herr Müller wurde vom Flugplatz abgeholt.
(müssen)
(Mr. Müller was picked up at the airport.)

You write: Herr Müller musste vom Flugplatz abgeholt werden.
(Mr. Müller had to be picked up at the airport.)

1. Das alte Auto wurde nicht mehr repariert. (können)
(The old car wasn't repaired anymore.)

_____?

(The old car couldn't be repaired anymore.)

2. Das Paket wurde sofort aufgemacht. (dürfen)
(The package was opened right away.)

(The package was allowed to be opened right away.)

3. Die Kinder wurden von ihrer Mutter abgeholt.
(sollen)
(The children were picked up by their mother.)

(The children were supposed to be picked up by their mother.)

4. Wurde euer Haus verkauft? (können)
(Was your house sold?)

(Could your house be sold?)

5. Diese Reise wurde letztes Jahr gemacht.
(This trip was made last year.)

(This trip had to be made last year.)

6. Hans und Inge wurden nicht eingeladen. (sollen)
(Hans and Inge weren't invited.)

(Hans and Inge weren't supposed to be invited.)

7. Unser Hund wurde diesmal nicht mitgenommen.
(können)
(Our dog was not taken along this time.)

(Our dog couldn't be taken along this time.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Das alte Auto konnte nicht mehr repariert werden.

2. Das Paket durfte sofort aufgemacht werden.

3. Die Kinder sollten von ihrer Mutter abgeholt werden.

4. Konnte euer Haus verkauft werden?

5. Diese Reise musste letztes Jahr gemacht werden.

6. Hans und Inge sollten nicht eingeladen werden.

7. Unser Hund konnte diesmal nicht mitgenommen werden.

Restate orally the following imperfect tense passive sentences so as to incorporate the appropriate form of the modal auxiliary verb in parentheses. Note also the English translation of each sentence.

1. Das Museum wurde nicht vor zehn Uhr geöffnet.
(können)

(The museum wasn't opened until ten o'clock.)

(The museum couldn't be opened until ten o'clock.)

2. Sie wurde im Krankenhaus nicht besucht. (wollen)

(She wasn't visited at the hospital.)

(She didn't want to be visited at the hospital.)

3. Das Dach wurde vor Winteranfang repariert.
(müssen)

(The roof was repaired before the beginning of winter.)

(The roof had to be repaired before the beginning of winter.)

4. Mir wurde nicht geholfen. (können)
 (I wasn't helped.)
 (I couldn't be helped.)
5. Die Hausaufgaben wurden gemacht. (sollen)
 (The homework was done.)
 (The homework was supposed to be done.)
6. Müllers Haus in Berlin wurde verkauft.
 (müssen)
 (The Müllers' house in Berlin was sold.)
 (The Millers' house in Berlin had to be sold.)

Write complete sentences on the basis of the given English, using the modal auxiliary verb and the main verb shown in parentheses. Use the imperfect tense of the passive voice.

1. An excursion to the Rhein could not be undertaken.
 (können - unternehmen)

2. The guests were supposed to be called by the waiter. (sollen - rufen)

3. He had to be helped. (müssen - helfen)

4. The new officer was supposed to be picked up.
 (sollen - abholen)

5. The door was not allowed to be opened.
 (dürfen - aufmachen)

6. Hans and Inge wanted to be invited.
 (wollen - einladen)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences in the imperfect tense of the passive voice, using the modal auxiliary verb and the main verb in parentheses.

1. Ein Ausflug an den Rhein konnte nicht unternommen werden.

2. Die Gäste sollten von dem Kellner gerufen werden.

3. Ihm musste geholfen werden.

4. Der neue Offizier sollte abgeholt werden.

5. Die Tür durfte nicht aufgemacht werden.

6. Hans and Inge wollten eingeladen werden.

1. The doctor could not be called. (können - rufen)

2. The gentleman had to be taken to his hotel.
(müssen - bringen)

3. The new students wanted to be picked up at ten o'clock. (wollen - abholen)

4. The professor was not to be disturbed.
(dürfen - stören)

5. The poor people were supposed to be helped.
(sollen - helfen)

NOTES

Present Perfect and Past Perfect Tense
Using Modal Auxiliaries
 (Double Infinitive)

In this **Lesson**, you will learn to form and use present perfect and past perfect tense sentences in which a modal auxiliary verb is used in conjunction with a main verb within the same sentence or clause. In addition, you will learn to use the present perfect and past perfect forms of the modal auxiliaries in sentences in which the modals are used as full verbs in their own right. The **Lesson** is divided into the following sections:

1. Present Perfect Constructions
Using Modal Auxiliaries
2. Present Perfect Constructions
Using Modal Auxiliaries in Subordinate Clauses
3. Past Perfect Constructions
Using Modal Auxiliaries
4. Present Perfect and Past Perfect Sentences
Using Modals as Full Verbs.

Present Perfect Constructions Using Modal Auxiliaries

You are already familiar with present tense sentences containing a modal auxiliary verb in addition to the main verb. For example:

Hans will eine Reise machen.

(Hans wants to take a trip.)

In the above sentence, what is the main verb?

The main verb in this sentence is machen.

What is the modal auxiliary?

The modal auxiliary is wollen, here used in the "er" form of the present tense.

You are also familiar with the formation of present perfect tense sentences which do NOT contain a modal auxiliary in addition to the main verb. For example:

Hans hat eine Reise gemacht.

(Hans has taken a trip.)

In this section, you will learn to form present perfect tense sentences in which both a main verb and a modal auxiliary are used. In terms of the examples above, you will learn to produce the German equivalent of sentences such as:

Hans [has] wanted to take a trip.

At this point, a strong caution is in order. Sentences in which a modal auxiliary is used along with a main verb do NOT form the present perfect tense in the manner to which you have been accustomed. Rather than making direct comparisons between the "regular" present perfect tense on the one hand, and the present perfect in sentences containing both main verb and modal auxiliary, it is preferable to concentrate on the latter as a completely new learning activity.

Listen to and repeat each of the following example sentences, which show the present perfect tense of sentences which use a modal auxiliary verb in conjunction with a main verb. Notice that the conjugated verb is the auxiliary haben (as you would expect), but that the infinitive form of the modal auxiliary follows the infinitive form of the main verb at the end of the sentence. This construction is appropriately called the double infinitive.

1. Franz hat alles wissen wollen.
(Franz [has]^{*} wanted to know everything.)

2. Ich habe am Sonntag arbeiten müssen.
(I [have] had to work on Sunday.)

3. Inge hat gestern abend nicht ausgehen dürfen.
(Inge was not [has not been] allowed to go out last night.)

Let us recapitulate:

Hans will eine Reise machen. (Present Tense: one infinitive)

Hans hat eine Reise machen wollen. (Present Perfect Tense: two infinitives)

Notice that in a perfect construction using a modal the auxiliary verb sein cannot ever be used, even though the main verb would have required it in a perfect construction without a modal:

Inge ist gestern abend nicht ausgegangen.

Inge hat gestern abend nicht ausgehen dürfen.

Remember that all modal verbs use the auxiliary haben to form a compound tense.

*The bracketed English equivalent for the German construction will henceforth be omitted for stylistic reasons. You should, however, be aware of the fact that the same meaning and tense equivalent for English may also be rendered in German:

Hans wollte eine Reise machen.

(Hans wanted to take a trip.)

For the purpose of this Lesson we shall leave aside the alternate and more colloquial construction shown on the previous page and concentrate on the double-infinitive pattern with haben. Word order should present no problem since the sequence main-verb infinitive plus modal infinitive will always occur at the end of the sentence, no matter how many other elements may be added:

Hans hat letztes Jahr so gern eine Reise nach Amerika machen wollen.

(Hans wanted so much to take a trip to America last year.)

Now listen to and repeat each of the following German sentences. After you have repeated a German sentence, listen for a signal and then say the English equivalent, bearing in mind our previous discussion on a stylistically correct translation:

1. Wir haben den ganzen Tag warten müssen.
2. Du hast gestern abend nicht kommen können.
3. Frau Müller hat uns anrufen sollen.
4. Sie haben in der Klasse nicht rauchen dürfen.
5. Wir haben Professor Schulz zum Bahnhof bringen müssen.
6. Haben Sie am Sonntag arbeiten müssen?

Restate orally each of the present tense sentences shown, substituting the present perfect tense.

1. Müllers wollen längere Zeit in Amerika bleiben.
Müllers längere Zeit in Amerika
(The Müllers wanted to stay in America for quite a while.)
2. Ingrid muss ihre Kinder zum Spielplatz bringen.
Ingrid ihre Kinder zum Spielplatz
(Ingrid had to take her children to the playground.)
3. Peter will Arzt werden.
Peter Arzt
(Peter wanted to become a doctor.)
4. Hans kann am Wochenende nicht kommen.
Hans am Wochenende nicht
(Hans couldn't come on the weekend.)
5. Die Kinder dürfen Schokolade essen.
Die Kinder Schokolade
(The children were allowed to eat chocolate.)
6. Wir sollen im Sommer Deutsch lernen.
Wir im Sommer Deutsch
(We were supposed to learn German during the summer.)

NOTES

Using the elements shown below, write complete German sentences in the present perfect tense. Note that in each case a modal auxiliary verb is present in addition to a main verb. Begin your sentence with the underlined element and make any necessary changes in word order.

1. ein neues Auto / kaufen / haben / wir / müssen

(We had to buy a new car.)

2. nach dem Kino / warten / auf uns / Peter / hat
sollen

(Peter was supposed to wait for us after the movie.)

3. nur einen Tag / sie / bleiben / wollen / haben

(They wanted to stay only one day.)

4. euren Bruder / dürfen / ihr / besuchen / habt

(Were you allowed to visit your brother?)

5. nicht mehr / habe / das alte Auto / können / ich /
reparieren

(I wasn't able to repair the old car any more.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWER.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Wir haben ein neues Auto kaufen müssen.

2. Nach dem Kino hat Peter auf uns warten sollen.

3. Sie haben nur einen Tag bleiben wollen.

4. Habt ihr euren Bruder besuchen dürfen?

5. Das alte Auto habe ich nicht mehr reparieren können.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences in the present perfect tense, using the elements shown. Begin your sentence with the underlined element, and make any necessary changes in word order.

1. ein Taxi / rufen / habe / ich / müssen

(I had to call a taxi.)

2. nach Deutschland / dieses Jahr / Meyers / können / fahren / haben

(The Meyers were able to go to Germany this year.)

3. Peter / wollen / hat / in München / besuchen / euch

(Did Peter want to visit you in Munich?)

4. gestern / finden / keinen Arzt / Frau Müller / können / hat

(Mrs. Müller couldn't find a doctor yesterday.)

5. die Kinder / im Garten des Nachbarn / spielen / haben / dürfen

(Were the children allowed to play in the neighbor's garden?)

Write complete German sentences on the basis of the given English. Use the present perfect tense with modal constructions.

1. We were not allowed to see the new apartment.

2. Our friend was supposed to pick us up last night.

3. Mr. Meyer had to fly to New York this morning.

4. I always wanted to ask Professor Schulz about
the book. (nach)

5. Were you [fam., sing.] able to take the trip to
Germany?

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the present perfect tense, on the basis of the given English.

1. The students wanted to talk to the teacher.

2. Professor Schulz couldn't take the trip.
(machen)

3. Were you allowed to open the present?
(ihr) (aufmachen)

4. Peter had to buy a new camera.

5. Ingrid was supposed to leave today.
(abfahren)

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Wir haben die neue Wohnung nicht sehen dürfen.

2. Unser Freund hat uns gestern abend abholen sollen.

3. Herr Meyer hat heute morgen nach New York fliegen müssen.

4. Ich habe Professor Schulz immer nach dem Buch fragen wollen.

5. Hast du die Reise nach Deutschland machen können?

Present perfect tense sentences with modal auxiliaries can also have reflexive main verbs. Reflexive constructions pose no problem if you remember the following rules:

1) In simple declarative sentences, the reflexive pronoun immediately follows the inflected verb. For example:

Herr Müller hat sich ein Haus in Köln kaufen wollen.

(Mr. Müller wanted to buy himself a house in Cologne.)

2) In sentences requiring subject-verb inverted word order (this includes interrogative constructions and sentences which begin with elements other than the subject), the reflexive pronoun immediately follows the subject. For example:

Hat Herr Müller sich ein Haus in Köln kaufen wollen?

(Did Mr. Müller want to buy himself a house in Cologne?)

Letztes Jahr hat Herr Müller sich ein Haus in Köln kaufen wollen.

(Last year, Mr. Müller wanted to buy himself a house in Cologne.)

Listen to and repeat the following sentences containing reflexive constructions. Pay special attention to word order and the placement of the reflexive pronoun.

1. Hans hat sich bei Professor Schulz entschuldigen müssen.
(Hans had to apologize to Professor Schulz.)
2. Er hat sich nicht für die Zeitschrift interessieren können.
(He couldn't get himself interested in the magazine.)
3. Die Kinder haben sich vor dem Essen die Hände waschen sollen.
(The children were supposed to wash their hands before dinner.)
4. Wir haben uns die neuen Wohnungen ansehen dürfen.
(We were allowed to look at the new apartments.)
5. Franz hat sich einen neuen Sportwagen kaufen wollen.
(Franz wanted to buy a new sports car.)

Say complete German sentences in the present perfect tense on the basis of the present tense sentences shown. All of these sentences contain reflexive constructions.

1. Werner will sich eine Flasche Wein bestellen.
2. Wir müssen uns ein neues Sofa kaufen.
3. Heute morgen soll Peter sich bei Professor Schulz entschuldigen.
4. Wir können uns mit Meyers einfach nicht unterhalten.
5. Darf das Kind sich ein Stück Kuchen holen?
6. Hans kann sich in Köln nicht zurechtfinden.
7. Ingrid will sich in der Küche nicht die Haare waschen.

NOTES

Write complete sentences in the present perfect tense, using the reflexive verbs shown in parentheses. Pay careful attention to the word order.

1. Paul was not able to say good-bye.
(sich verabschieden)

2. He wanted to get himself a bottle of beer.
(sich holen)

3. We always wanted to buy a bigger house for ourselves. (sich kaufen)

4. The children were allowed to dress themselves.
(sich anziehen)

5. The new students were supposed to have a look at the museum. (sich anschauen)

6. Were you (fam. sing) able to converse with the German family? (sich unterhalten)

7. This morning, Hans had to apologize.
(sich entschuldigen)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Paul hat sich nicht verabschieden können.

2. Er hat sich eine Flasche Bier holen wollen.

3. Wir haben schon immer ein grösseres Haus kaufen wollwn.

4. Die Kinder haben sich anziehen dürfen.

5. Die neuen Schüler haben sich das Museum ansehen sollen.

6. Hast du dich mit der deutschen Familie unterhalten können?

7. Heute morgen hat Hans sich entschuldigen müssen.

START THE TAPE .

In **Lesson 18**, you learned that certain verbs usually used as main verbs can on some occasions also be used as modal auxiliaries. In such cases, they function exactly as the "real" modal auxiliaries with respect to word order.

Verbs which can serve a modal auxiliary function include verbs pertaining to the senses (primarily, sehen and hören), the verb helfen, and the regular and reflexive verbs lassen and sich lassen.

Listen to and repeat each of the following examples, noticing especially the English translation.

1. (sehen) Wir haben ihn nicht kommen sehen.
(We didn't see him come.)
2. (hören) Gestern abend habe ich Leontyne Price singen hören.
(Last night I heard Leontyne Price sing.)
3. (helfen) Ich habe meinem Vater das Dach reparieren helfen.
(I helped my father repair the roof.)
4. (lassen) Der Offizier hat seiner Freundin Blumen schicken lassen.
(The officer had flowers sent to his girl friend.)
5. (sich lassen) Hast du dir die Haare schneiden lassen?
(Did you have your hair cut?)

Write complete German sentences in the present perfect tense on the basis of the present tense sentences shown.

1. Herr Müller lässt seinen neuen Anzug abholen.

(Mr. Müller had his new suit picked up.)

2. Ich höre Frau Meyer oft singen.

(I often heard Mrs. Meyer sing.)

3. Seht ihr den Zug abfahren?

(Did you see the train depart?)

4. Frau Schulz lässt sich ein neues Kleid machen.

(Mrs. Schulz had a new dress made for herself.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Herr Müller hat seinen neuen Anzug abholen lassen.

2. Ich habe Frau Meyer oft singen hören.

3. Habt ihr den Zug abfahren sehen?

4. Frau Schultz hat sich ein neues Kleid machen lassen.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences in the present perfect tense on the basis of the present tense sentences shown.

1. Ich lasse mein Auto schon wieder reparieren.

2. Lässt Herr Meyer das Bier holen?

3. Ingrid hört die Kinder rufen.

4. Die Soldaten lassen sich die Haare kurz schneiden.

5. Wir sehen Herrn Meyer in das Haus gehen.

6. Hilfst du der Dame das Gepäck tragen?

NOTES

Present Perfect Constructions

Using Modal Auxiliaries in Subordinate Clauses

In the preceding section, you learned to form the present perfect tense with modal auxiliaries in sentences consisting of only a single (main) clause. In this section, you will learn to form sentences in which the present perfect modal auxiliary construction is used in subordinate clauses.

Consider the following sentence which shows the present perfect tense of a modal auxiliary construction in a main clause (as in the exercises of Section 1):

1. Hans hat sein Auto verkaufen wollen.
(Hans wanted to sell his car.)

Now observe this sentence which shows the same information being expressed in a subordinate clause:

2. Ich weiss, dass Hans sein Auto hat verkaufen wollen.
(I know that Hans wanted to sell his car.)

Note the exception to the transposed word-order rule. (For reference, regular transposed word order was discussed in **Lesson 23**.) Instead of going to the end of the subordinate clause, the conjugated auxiliary verb haben is placed just before the double infinitive.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the English translation and the position of the conjugated present tense form of haben, immediately preceding the double infinitive.

1. Ich weiss nicht, ob Herr Meyer hat zurückkommen wollen.
(I don't know whether Mr. Meyer wanted to come back.)
2. Er hatte keine Zeit, weil er nach München hat fahren sollen.
(He didn't have time because he was supposed to go to Munich.)
3. Weissst du, dass Ingrid ihrem Freund nicht hat schreiben dürfen?
(Do you know that Ingrid wasn't allowed to write to her boy friend?)
4. Es gefiel ihnen nicht, dass sie heute haben arbeiten müssen.
(They didn't like the fact that they had to work today.)
5. Ich möchte gern wissen, warum Hans nicht hat mitkommen können.
(I would like to know why Hans could not come along.)

Say complete German sentences, adding the appropriate subordinate clause on the basis of the given English. Pay particular attention to word order.

1. Mr. Meyer explained to his friends, why he wasn't allowed to smoke any cigarettes.

Herr Meyer erklärte seinen Freunden, warum er keine Zigaretten

2. He didn't know that we wanted to sell our house.

Er wusste nicht, dass wir unser Haus

3. I know for sure that he had to go to Cologne yesterday.

Ich weiss genau, dass er gestern nach Köln

4. Mrs. Müller did not go downtown today, although she was supposed to meet her friend there at a café.

Frau Müller ist heute nicht in die Stadt gefahren, obwohl sie sich dort mit ihrer Freundin in einem Café

5. I bought myself a new bicycle because I couldn't repair the old one.

Ich habe mir ein neues Fahrrad gekauft, weil ich das alte nicht

Write complete German sentences, using the given elements, on the basis of the English sentences shown.

1. Wir wissen, dass / hat / sein Haus / verkaufen / Herr Meyer / müssen

(We know that Mr. Meyer had to sell his house.)

2. Die Kinder haben Geld bekommen, damit / gehen / ins Kino / sie / haben / können

(The children got money so that they could go to the movies.)

3. Peter hat uns nicht geschrieben, dass / mitbringen / er / hat / seine Freunde / wollen

(Peter didn't write us that he wanted to bring his friends along.)

4. Wir haben Hans gefragt, warum / uns / leihen / nicht / seinen / Sportwagen / wollen / er / hat

(We asked Hans why he didn't want to lend us his sports car.)

5. Ingrid musste erst ihre Eltern fragen, bevor / ausgehen / sie / hat / mit dem Schüler / dürfen

(Ingrid had to ask her parents first before she was allowed to go out with the student.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Wir wissen, dass Herr Meyer sein Haus hat verkaufen müssen.

2. Die Kinder haben Geld bekommen, damit sie ins Kino haben gehen können.

3. Peter hat uns nicht geschrieben, dass er seine Freunde hat mitbringen wollen.

4. Wir haben Hans gefragt, warum er uns seinen Sportwagen nicht hat leihen wollen.

5. Ingrid musste erst ihre Eltern fragen, bevor sie mit dem Schüler hat ausgehen dürfen.

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Section 3

Past Perfect Constructions Using Modal Auxiliaries

As you learned in **Lesson 34**, the past perfect tense is formed in the same manner as the present perfect tense, with the single exception that the auxiliary verb is in the imperfect tense, rather than the present tense.

Brief review exercises on the imperfect tense forms of haben follow.

Listen and repeat:

ich hatte	wir hatten
du hattest	ihr hattet
er [sie, es] hatte	sie hatten
	Sie hatten

Study these forms as required, then turn the page for further exercises:

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate imperfect tense form of haben.

1. er _____
2. wir _____
3. du _____
4. Sie _____
5. ihr _____
6. ich _____
7. sie [pl.] _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. hatte
_____ 2. hatten
_____ 3. hattest
_____ 4. hatten
_____ 5. hattet
_____ 6. hatte
_____ 7. hatten

START THE TAPE.

As explained in **Lesson 34**, the past perfect tense is used when the speaker or writer wishes, in the course of a narration in the past, to "reach back" to a point even further in the past. In English, this tense is usually expressed by a verb form containing the auxiliary had ("had gone," "had seen," "had expected," etc.).

Listen to and repeat each of the following pairs of sentences, in the present perfect and past perfect tense, respectively. Note also the difference in the English translation for each of the two tenses.

1. Herr Müller hat die ganze Nacht nicht schlafen können.
(Mr. Müller was not able to sleep all night.)
- Herr Müller hatte die ganze Nacht nicht schlafen können.
(Mr. Müller had not been able to sleep all night.)

2. Ich habe drei Stunden warten müssen.
(I had to wait for three hours.)
- Ich hatte drei Stunden warten müssen.
(I had had to wait for three hours.)
3. Ingrid hat nicht kommen dürfen.
(Ingrid was not allowed to come.)
- Ingrid hatte nicht kommen dürfen.
(Ingrid had not been allowed to come.)
4. Wir haben leider zu früh nach Hause gehen müssen.
(Unfortunately, we had to go home too early.)
- Wir hatten leider zu früh nach Hause gehen müssen.
(Unfortunately, we had had to go home too early.)
5. Hast du nicht länger in Köln bleiben wollen?
(Didn't you want to stay longer in Cologne?)
- Hattest du nicht länger in Köln bleiben wollen?
(Hadn't you wanted to stay longer in Cologne?)
6. Sie haben uns zum Flugplatz bringen sollen.
(They were expected to take us to the airport.)
- Sie hatten uns zum Flugplatz bringen sollen.
(They had been expected to take us to the airport.)

Write complete German sentences in the past perfect tense, using the given elements. Make any necessary changes in word order and word forms.

1. Hans / sollen / haben / abholen / ihn

(Hans had been expected to pick him up.)

2. Professor Schulz / warten / müssen / lange /
haben / auf die Bücher

(Professor Schulz had had to wait a long time
for the books.)

3. haben / ihr / können / zum Arzt / gehen

(Had you been able to go to the doctor?)

4. wir / Paul und Maria / haben / einladen / nicht /
wollen

(We hadn't wanted to invite Paul and Maria.)

5. nicht / du / letzte Woche / dürfen / ausgehen /
haben

(Hadn't you been allowed to go out last week?)

6. dass / wusste / haben / so früh / wollen / er /
zurückkommen / ich / nicht

(I didn't know that he had wanted to come back
that early.)

7. haben / uns / helfen / bei der Arbeit / wollen
nicht / ihr

(Hadn't you wanted to help us with the work?)

8. das Kind / nicht / wollen / haben / sich
entschuldigen

(The child hadn't wanted to apologize.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Hans hatte ihn abholen sollen.

2. Professor Schulz hatte lange auf die Bücher warten müssen.

3. Hattet ihr zum Arzt gehen können?

4. Wir hatten Paul und Maria nicht einladen wollen.

5. Hattest du letzte Woche nicht ausgehen dürfen?

6. Ich wusste nicht, dass er so früh hatte zurückkommen wollen.

7. Hattet ihr uns nicht bei der Arbeit helfen wollen?

8. Das Kind hatte sich nicht entschuldigen wollen.

START THE TAPE.

Present Perfect and Past Perfect

Sentences Using Modals as Full Verbs

It is, of course, possible to have sentences in the present or past perfect tense in which the modal auxiliary serves as a full verb rather than as a complement to some other verb. Consider the second sentence in each of the following pairs:

Hast du ins Kino gehen dürfen?

(Were you allowed to go to the movies?)

Hast du es gedurft?

(Were you allowed to do it?)

Wir haben ihn vom Bahnhof abholen sollen.

(We were supposed to pick him up at the train station.)

Wir haben es gesollt.

(We were supposed to do it.)

Sie hatten nicht zur Party kommen können.

(They had not been able to come to the party.)

Sie hatten es nicht gekonnt.

(They had not been able to do it.)

As often happens in conversation enough reference to a given action or fact has been made in the preceding context so that all participants are aware of the matter being dealt with. In such cases, to avoid redundancy, a German speaker will often use the pronoun es as a substitute for that part of the message which is already fully understood.

For example, in the first pair of sentences on the preceding page, the conversation is about going to the movies. In one case, the speaker gives the full information:

Hast du ins Kino gehen dürfen?

(Were you allowed to go to the movies?)

In the other case, the speaker assumes that the listener is aware that "going to the movies" is being discussed, and thus says only:

Hast du es gedurft?

(Were you allowed to do it [i.e., go to the movies]?)

In this second type of sentence, the modal auxiliary verb is being used as a full verb, and the present perfect and past perfect tense is formed by the regular rules which you learned in **Lessons 21, 22, and 34**; that is, the conjugated form of haben is used and the past participle of the main verb is placed at the end of the sentence or clause.

For each of the exercises below, you will see a sentence in which a modal auxiliary verb is being used in conjunction with some other verb (i.e., the type of sentences which you have been practicing in the preceding sections). When you hear the signal, say a sentence in which the matter under discussion is replaced by es. You will also have to reformulate the sentence so that the modal auxiliary is used as a main verb. For example:

You see: Die Kinder haben im Garten spielen dürfen.

You say: Die Kinder haben es gedurft.

Note that sentences 3 and 5 require the past perfect tense, to which you are also alerted by the symbol (+).

1. Der Soldat hat den Offizier zum Hotel fahren müssen.
2. Wir haben nicht mitgehen wollen.
3. (+) Sie hatten uns anrufen sollen.
4. Warum hast du nicht länger in München bleiben können?
5. (+) Peter und Maria hatten eine Reise machen dürfen.

Say complete German sentences with es as in the preceding exercise.

1. Sie hatten das Spiel nicht verstehen können.
2. Meine Mutter hat schnell den Arzt rufen müssen.
3. Professor Schulz hatte nach Amerika fliegen sollen.
4. Hast du gestern abend ausgehen dürfen?
5. Sie haben uns schreiben wollen.
6. Ich habe gestern arbeiten müssen.
7. Die Kinder hatten zu Hause bleiben sollen.

INDEX

OF GRAMMATICAL FEATURES

Each entry is followed by the roman numeral indicated in the title of the grammatical structure book and by the appropriate page numbers in this particular book. For example, the first entry of the index

"Aber" and "Sondern" I 160 - 162

means that these items will be found in GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURES I on pages 160 - 162.

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
"Aber" and "Sondern"	I 160-162	- Comparative of ...	
Accusative Case		- Descriptive Adjectives	II 299-307
- Articles	I 12- 29	- Predicate Adjectives	II 287-298
- Descriptive Adjective Endings after "Der" words in Accusative Case		- Comparison of ...	II 227-286
- Singular	II 8- 14	- Descriptive Adjectives	
- Plural	II 22- 28	- In Appositions	II 29- 32
- Noun Objects - sentences with Dative and Accusative	I 85- 91	- Endings after "Der" words	II 1- 32, II 110-119
- Personal Pronouns	I 133-138	- Nominative Singular	II 4- 7
- Familiar	I 209-212	- Accusative Singular	II 8- 14
- Prepositions		- Dative Singular	II 15- 21
- requiring Accusative	I 119-122	- Plural	II 22- 28
- taking either Accusative or Dative	I 123-130	- Endings after "Kein" words	II 33- 55
- contracted forms of ...	I 131-132	- Nominative Singular	II 33- 43
- Reflexive constructions in Accusative Case	I 225-230	- Accusative Singular	II 44- 50
- Relative Pronouns	II 241-245	- Dative Singular	II 51- 54
- Word order for emphasis	I 92- 96	- Plural	II 55
Adjectives		- Unpreceded Descriptive Adjectives	II 124-130
- In Appellations, Salutations and Idiomatic Expressions	II 131-136	- Not Preceded by "Der" and "Kein" words	II 124-140
		- Past and Present Participles used as Adjectives	III 175-179
		- Predicate Adjectives	II 1- 3
		- comparative of	II 287-298
		- Participles (Past and Present) used as Predicate Adjectives	III 171-174
		- Quantity, Adjectives expressing	II 137-140

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Adverbs		Conditional	
- Comparison of Adverbs	II 308-312	- in "then" clauses	IV 27- 38
- Participles (Past and Present) used as ...	III 166-170	Contractions of Prepositions	I 131-132
Appellations, Salutations and Idiomatic Expressions		Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 27- 38
- Adjectives used in	II 131-136	- Containing Modals	IV 48- 52
Appositions, descriptive adjectives in	II 29- 32	- Past Subjunctive with Modals in...	IV 123-130
Articles		- Subjunctive of Strong Verbs in... IV 72- 76	
- Accusative Case	I 12- 20	"Da" Compounds	III 26- 28
- Dative Case		Dative Case	
- of Definite Article	I 49- 52	- Articles	
- of Indefinite Article	I 53- 54	- Definite	I 49- 52
Clothing or Parts of Body, reference to	I 258-260	- Indefinite	I 53- 54
Comparative		- Descriptive Adjective Endings After "Kein" words	
- of Descriptive Adjective	II 299-307	- in Dative Case	
- of Predicate Adjective	II 287-298	- Singular	II 51- 54
Comparison of Adjectives	II 277-286	- Plural	II 55
Comparison of Adverbs	II 308-312	- "Kein" and Possesive Adjectives	I 55- 60
		- Noun Objects - sentences with Dative and Accusative	I 85- 91
		- Passive Voice with Dative Objects	III 48- 54

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Personal Pronouns	I 67- 72	Descriptive Adjectives - see Adjectives, descriptive	
- Familiar	I 209-212	"Dieser" and "Der" words - see "Der" words	
- Prepositions		Double Infinitive Construction	
- requiring Dative	I 73- 84	- Future Tense, using Modal Auxiliary	IV 1- 26
- taking either Dative or Accusative	I 123-130	- Past and Present Perfect, using Modal Auxiliary	III 271-294
- contracted Forms of ...	I 131-132	Emphasis (with expressed word order)	I 92- 96
- Reflexive Constructions in Dative	I 231-237	Extended Adjectival Constructions	
- Relative Pronouns	II 246-249	- Containing Past Participles	III 230-239
- "Schmecken" and "Gefallen"	I 61- 66	- Containing Present Participles	III 240-242
- Dative Verbs in Present Perfect Passive	III 155-160	Extended Adverbial Constructions	
- Word order, for emphasis	I 92- 96	- Containing Present Participles	III 243-247
Definite Articles		Familiar Address	I 187-208
- Accusative Case of ...		- Imperatives	I 203-208
- Dative Case of ...	I 49- 52	- Personal Pronouns	
"Der" words ("dieser" and others)		- Nominative Case	I 187-194
- Adjectives endings after "Der" words	II 1- 32, II 110-123	- Accusative Case	I 209-212
- "Dieser" and other "Der" words	II 95-109	- Dative Case	I 209-212
- Genitive of "Der" words	III 110-129	- Possessive Adjectives	I 213-224

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- "Sein" and "Haben" and other verbs	I 187-194
- Separable Prefix Verbs and Modals	I 195-202
Foreign Verb ending in "-ieren" and Present Tense of ...	II 171-174
Future Tense	III 205-230
- Double Infinitive (see Future Tense, Modal Auxiliary)	
- Formation and Use of	III 211-221
- in Passive Voice	III 224-230
- Modal Auxiliary, use with (Double Infinitive)	IV 1- 26
- Future Tense in sentences containing Modals or verbs used like Modals	IV 1- 13
- Present Probability, expressed in sentences containing Modals	IV 14- 16
- Subordinate Clauses with True Modals	IV 17- 21
- Subordinate Clauses with verbs used like Modals	IV 22- 26
"Gefallen" und "Schmecken"	I 61- 66
Genitive Case	III 110-144

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Common Nouns, "der" and "ein" words - Genitive forms of ..	III 110-129
- Interrogatives and Relative Pronouns, Genitive forms of	III 130-135
- Prepositions requiring Genitive	III 136-139
- Proper Nouns, Genitive forms of	III 140-144
Idiomatic Expressions, Appellations and Salutations	
- Adjectives used in	II 131-136
Imperative	
- Familiar Imperatives	I 203-208
- Forms of	I 108-114
- Reflexive Constructions in ...	I 247-252
- Separable Prefix verbs and ...	I 115-118
Imperfect Tense	III 55- 65
- Formation of	
- with weak verbs	III 55- 65
- with strong verbs	III 86-103
- with mixed verbs	III 104-109
- of "haben", "sein" and "werden"	III 73- 85
- of Modals	III 66- 72

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- of Passive Voice sentences - containing Modals	III 248-261 III 262-270	"Lassen" and "Sich Lassen"	II 86- 94
Indefinite Articles		"Man" - use of as Indefinite Pronoun	
- Accusative Case of	I 12- 29	- omission of in Present Perfect Passive	III 155-160
- Dative Case of	I 53-54	- Passive equivalents of Active sentences with "Man"	III 48- 54
Indefinite Pronoun "Man" - see "Man" used as indefinite pronoun		Mixed Verbs	
Inseparable Prefix Verbs		- Imperfect Tense of	III 104-109
- Present Perfect Tense of	II 167-170	- Present Perfect Tense of	II 151-158
Interrogative		- Subjunctive Forms of	IV 91- 93
- Genitive Case of	III 130-135	Modal Auxiliary Verbs	
Inverted Word Order	I 25- 28	- Contrary-to-Fact Statements containing Modals	IV 48- 52 IV 123-130
Irregular Verbs - see strong verbs and mixed verbs		- in Past Subjunctive	
"Kein" Words		- Double Infinitive Constructions - Future Tense Constructions with ...	IV 1- 26 IV 1- 13 IV 14- 16 IV 17- 21
- Adjective endings after ...	II 33- 35	- containing Modals or Verbs used like Modals	
- Dative of "Kein" and Possessive Adjectives	I 55- 60	- expressing Present Probability in sentences containing Modals	
- Plural Forms of ...	I 177-186	- In Subordinate Clauses; with true Modals,	
- Use of ...	I 29- 32		

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Past Perfect Constructions with ...	III 289-292	Mögen. - use of	I 155-159
- using Modals as Full Verbs in ...	III 293-294	"N - nouns"	I 21- 24
- Present Perfect Construction with ...	III 271-284	Nominative Case	
- using Modals as Full Verbs in ...	III 293-294	- Descriptive Adjective Endings after "der" words	
- using Modals in Subordinate Clauses	III 285-288	- Nominative, singular	II 4- 7
- Familiar Forms of Modals	I 195-202	plural	II 22- 28
- Formation and Use of Modals	I 139-140	- Descriptive Adjective Endings after "kein" words	
- Imperfect Tense of Modals	III 66- 72	- Nominative, singular	II 34- 43
- of Passive containing Modals	III 262-270	plural	II 55
- Mögen, use of	I 155-159	- of Familiar Personal Pronouns	I 187-194
- Passive Sentences containing Modals	III 42- 47	- of Relative Pronouns	II 232-240
- Imperfect Tense of ...	III 262-270	Participles	III 161-179
- Past Subjunctive with Modals		- Extended Adjectival Constructions	
- In Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 123-130	- containing Past Participles	III 230-239
- other uses of	IV 131-145	- containing Present Participles	III 240-242
- Reflexive Constructions with Modals	I 253-257	- Extended Adverbial Constructions	
- with Separable Prefixes	I 151-154	- containing Present Participles	III 243-247
- Verbs used like Modals	II 69- 94	- Formation of Participles, Past and Present	III 161-165

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Past and Present Participles		- of Separable Prefix Verbs and Reflexive Constructions	
- used as Adverbs	III 166-170	- Use of ...	III 192-195
- used as Descriptive Adjectives	III 175-179		III 196-204
- used as Predicate Adjectives	III 171-174	Past Subjunctive	
Parts of Body or Clothing, reference to	I 258-260	- Forms of ...	IV 101-112
Passive Voice		- with Modals	
- with Dative Object; Passive equivalent of Active sentences with "man"	III 48- 54	- Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 123-130
- Future Tense Passive	III 224-230	- other uses of Past Subjunctive with Modals	IV 131-139
- Imperfect Tense Passive	III 248-261	- Uses of ...	IV 113-122
- Modal Auxiliary in Passive sentences	III 42- 47	Perfect Tense - see Past Perfect and Present Perfect	
- Present Tense Passive	III 29- 54	Personal Pronouns - see Pronouns, Personal	
- Present Perfect Tense Passive	III 145-154	Plural Forms	I 163-186
- with "von" + Agent, Dative Verbs, omission of "man"	III 157-160	Possessive Adjectives	I 33- 48
Past Participle - see Participles, past		- Dative Case of Possessive Adjectives and "Kein"	I 55- 60
Past Perfect Tense	III 180-204	Predicate Adjectives - see Adjectives, predicate	
- Modal Auxiliaries used in ...	III 289-292	Prefixes - see separable Prefix verbs and Inseparable Prefix verbs	
- used as Full Verbs	III 293-294	Pre-Noun Inserts	III 230-239
- of Regular or Irregular Verbs	III 180-191		

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Prepositions		- Relative - see Relative Pronouns	
- requiring the Accusative	I 119-138	Quantity, adjectives expressing	II 137-140
- requiring the Dative	I 73- 84	Reciprocal Meaning, reflexive constructions with ...	I 244-246
- which take either Accusative or Dative	I 123-130	Regular verbs	
- requiring the Genitive	II 136-139	Regular Verbs - see Weak Verbs	I 225-262
- contracted Forms of ...	I 131-132	- in the Accusative Case	I 225-230
- Relative Pronouns following ... - see "Relative Pronouns"		- in the Dative Case	I 231-237
- Verbs and Phrases with Prepositions	IV 140-145	- in the Imperative	I 247-252
Present Participles - see Participles, Present		- with Modal Auxiliaries	I 253-257
Probability		- with Reciprocal Meaning	I 244-246
- Future Tense expressing Present Probability	III 222-223	- with Separable Prefix Verbs	I 238-243
- in sentences containing Modals	IV 14- 16	- Reference to Clothing or Parts of the Body	I 258-260
Pronouns		Relative Pronouns	II 229-276
- Personal		- Overview of ...	II 229-231
- Dative Case of ...	I 67- 72	- Nominative Case of ...	II 232-240
- Accusative Case of ...	I 133-138	- Accusative Case of ...	II 241-245
- Familiar Personal Pronouns		- Dative Case of ...	II 246-249
- Nominative Case	I 187-194		
- Dative and Accusative Case	I 209-212		

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Genitive Case of ...	II 130-135	Strong Verbs	
- Following Prepositions		- List of Commonly Used Strong Verbs	II 197-203
- requiring Accusative	II 256-257	- Present Tense of	I 1- 11
- requiring Dative	II 258-262	- Imperfect Tense of Strong Verbs	III 86-103
- taking either Dative or Accusative	II 263-268	- Past Perfect Tense of Regular and Irregular Verbs	III 180-191
- "wer" and "was" as Relative Pronouns	III 1- 15	- Present Perfect Tense of Irregular Verbs	II 151-158
Salutations, Appellations and Idiomatic Expressions		- Subjunctive Forms of Strong Verbs	IV 59- 71
- Adjectives used in ...	II 131-136	- in Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 72- 76
"Schmecken" and "Gefallen"	I 61- 66	- in other Subjunctive Contexts	IV 77- 83
Separable Prefix Verbs	I 97-107	Subjunctive	
- Past Perfect of	III 192-195	- Contrary-to-Fact Statements, subjunctive of "werden", conditional in "then" Clauses	IV 27- 38
- Present Perfect of	II 162-166	- Contrary-to-Fact Statements	
- Familiar Forms of	II 195-202	- containing Modals	IV 48- 52
- Imperative Forms of	I 115-118	- subjunctive if Strong Verbs contained in ...	IV 72- 76
- Modal Verbs with ...	I 151-154	- of Strong Verbs	IV 59- 71
- Reflexive Constructions with ...	I 238-243	- in Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 72- 76
Sequence of Objects - see Word Order		- in other Subjunctive Contexts	IV 77- 83
"Sondern" and "Aber"	I 160-162		

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- of Weak Verbs	IV 84- 90
- of Mixed Verbs	IV 91- 93
- Subjunctive uses of Weak and Mixed Verbs	IV 93-100
- Subjunctive of "Haben", "Sein" in "if" Clauses	IV 39- 47
- Past Subjunctive - see Past Subjunctive	
- other uses of Subjunctive	IV 53- 58
Subordinating Conjunctions	
- Transposed Word Order after ...	II 204-212
Subordinate Clauses	
- Transposed word order in ...	II 213-221
- Following Question words	II 222-226
- Sentences Beginning with a Subordinate Clause	II 227-228
Superlative	
- of Descriptive Adjectives	II 299-307
- of Predicate Adjectives	II 287-298
Tenses - see specific tenses	

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Transposed Word Order - see Word Order, transposed	
Verbs - see: Strong Verbs	
Mixed Verbs	
Weak Verbs	
Modal Auxiliary Verbs	
Separable Prefix Verbs	
Inseparable Prefix Verbs	
"Von" + Agent Phrases	III 155-160
Weak Verbs	
- Imperfect Tense of Weak Verbs	III 55- 65
- Past Perfect Tense of Regular and Irregular Verbs	III 180-191
- Present Perfect Tense of Weak Verbs	II 144-150
- Subjunctive Forms of Weak Verbs	IV 84- 90
- Subjunctive Uses of Weak and Mixed Verbs	IV 93-100
"Wer" und "Was" as Relative Pronouns	III 1- 15
"Wo" Compounds	III 16- 25
Word Order	
- for Emphasis	I 92- 96
- Inverted	I 25- 28

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Sentences with Dative and Accusative Noun Object	I 85- 91
- Sentences with two Noun Objects	II 56- 58
- Sentences with one Noun Object and one Pronoun Object	II 59- 63
- Sentences with two Pronoun Objects	II 64- 68
- Sequence of Objects	II 56- 68
- Transposed Word Order	II 204-228
- After Subordinating Conjunctions	II 204-212
- In Subordinate Clauses using Separable Prefix Verbs, Modal Auxiliary Verbs, Reflexive Constructions, and Present Perfect Tense	II 213-221
- In Subordinate Clauses following Question Words	II 222-226
- Sentences beginning with a Subordinate Clause	II 227-228